





Jürgen Seefeldt and Ludger Syré  
Portals to the Past and to the Future –  
Libraries in Germany







Jürgen Seefeldt and Ludger Syré

# Portals to the Past and to the Future – Libraries in Germany

Published by  
Bibliothek und Information Deutschland –  
the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID)




With a Foreword by Claudia Lux

Translated by Janet MacKenzie  
incorporating a revised translation of the 1<sup>st</sup> edition by Diann Pelz-Rusch  
3<sup>rd</sup> revised edition




2011  
Georg Olms Verlag  
Hildesheim · Zürich · New York






Das Werk ist urheberrechtlich geschützt.  
Jede Verwertung außerhalb der engen Grenzen  
des Urheberrechtsgesetzes ist ohne Zustimmung  
des Verlages unzulässig.  
Dies gilt insbesondere für Vervielfältigungen,  
Übersetzungen, Mikroverfilmungen  
und die Einspeicherung und Verarbeitung in  
elektronischen Systemen.

This work is copyright protected by German copyright law  
No part of this book may be utilized, translated, reproduced  
on microfilm or stored and processed in electronic form  
without the permission of the publishers






Die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek verzeichnet diese Publikation  
in der Deutschen Nationalbibliografie;  
detaillierte bibliografische Daten sind im Internet über  
<http://dnb.d-nb.de> abrufbar.



The German National Library lists this publication in the German  
National Bibliography. Detailed bibliographic data are available  
online at <http://dnb.d-nb.de>

© Georg Olms Verlag, Hildesheim 2011  
[www.olms.de](http://www.olms.de)  
All rights reserved  
Printed in Germany  
Printed on acid-free, age-resistant paper  
Cover design: Anna Braungart  
Layout: J. Luís de Freitas-Branco  
Printed by Druckhaus Köthen GmbH  
ISBN 978-3-487-14615-7



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword .....	7	· Private Funding Institutions .....	38
<b>German librarianship in figures 2009</b> .....	10	The Many Different Types of Library .....	38
<b>1 History</b> .....	11	Libraries at National Level .....	38
<b>The Historical Development of Libraries in Germany</b> .....	11	· The German National Library (Deutsche Nationalbibliothek) .....	38
· From the Middle Ages until Secularization .....	11	· The Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage (Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz) .....	41
· From the 19 <sup>th</sup> Century to the Second World War .....	15	· The Bavarian State Library in Munich (Bayerische Staatsbibliothek) .....	43
· From Divided to United Germany .....	18	· The Central Subject Libraries .....	44
<b>2 Education and Culture</b> .....	23	State Libraries (Landesbibliotheken) and other Regional Libraries .....	45
<b>Germany's Political, Administrative and Organizational Structure</b> .....	23	Libraries of Higher Education Institutions .....	48
Educational Institutions .....	27	· University Libraries .....	48
· General Schools .....	27	· Libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences and other Higher Education Institutions .....	50
· Vocational Training .....	28	Special and Technical Libraries .....	51
· The Public and Private Media Sector: Photo and Film Services, Media Centres, Commercial Providers .....	28	Public Libraries .....	55
· Professional Continuing Education and Further Education .....	29	· Local Authority Public Libraries .....	56
· Adult Education and Community Colleges .....	30	· State Service Centres for Public Libraries .....	60
· Universities and other Higher Education Institutions .....	30	· Public Libraries maintained by the Churches .....	61
The Book Trade .....	33	Special Areas of Public Librarianship .....	62
<b>3 Library Diversity</b> .....	36	· Children's and Young People's Libraries .....	62
<b>The Multifaceted Picture of Libraries in Germany</b> .....	36	· School Libraries .....	63
The Many Different Types of Funding Institutions .....	36	· Library Services for Special User Groups .....	65
· Public Funding Institutions: Federal Government – Federal States – Municipalities – Public Foundations .....	36	· Other Libraries .....	66
· Ecclesiastical Funding Institutions .....	37	Information and Documentation Centres .....	66
		<b>4 Professions and Associations</b> ....	69
		<b>The Organization(s) of German Librarianship</b> .....	69
		The Library Professions .....	69

The History of Professional Librarianship Training .....	71
Librarianship Training and Training Institutions in Germany .....	72
Continuing Professional Education and Training for Library Staff .....	74
Institutional Cooperation Among Libraries in Germany .....	74
· The Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID) as Umbrella Organization .....	75
· German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv) .....	76
· Association of Information and Library Professionals (Berufsverband Information Bibliothek e.V. – BIB) .....	79
· Association of German Librarians (Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare e.V. – VDB) .....	80
· ekz-Library Service, Reutlingen .....	81
· The Bertelsmann Foundation, Gütersloh .....	83
· The Goethe Institute e.V., Munich .....	84
· The German Society for Information Science and Information Practice (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informationswissenschaft und Informationspraxis e.V. – DGI) .....	85
International Cooperation .....	86

## 5 Cooperation between German Libraries .....

<b>Cooperation within Local, Regional and National Services .....</b>	<b>89</b>
The Principles of Library Cooperation .....	89
Cooperation in Market Scanning and Acquisitions .....	91
· The German Research Foundation, the Special Subject Field Collection-building Programme and the Virtual Subject Libraries .....	91

· The Collection of German Imprints (Sammlung Deutscher Drucke) .....	94
· Book Review Cooperation in Public Libraries (Lektoratskooperation) ..	95
Cooperation in Cataloguing and Subject Indexing .....	96
· The Regional Network Systems .....	97
· The National Periodicals Database and the Electronic Periodicals Library .....	99
· Bibliographies of Early Imprints .....	101
Cooperative User and Information Services .....	103
· National Interlibrary Lending .....	103
· Electronic Document Delivery Services ..	105
· Cooperative Information Services .....	106

## 6 The Future of the Library, the Library of the Future .....

Parameters and strategic issues .....	107
Concepts and models for the public library of the future .....	110
Vision and reality in academic libraries ...	112
The Digital Library .....	113
Summary and Outlook .....	117

### Appendices .....

The Authors .....	118
The Translator .....	118
Picture References .....	119
· In Order of Appearance in the Text .....	119
· Alphabetical Index by Location .....	120
Winners of the National Library Prize .....	120
Further Reading .....	120
· Books and Yearbooks .....	120
· Journals .....	122
· Internet Addresses .....	123
Subject Index (Names, Institutions, Abbreviations) .....	123

## FOREWORD

The publication of this third updated and revised English edition of "Portals to the Past and to the Future – Libraries in Germany" is the result of a remarkable success story. Since the publication of the original German edition accompanying the 96th Congress of the International Federation of Library Associations IFLA 2003 in Berlin, the book has been translated into English and a further eight languages including Arabic and Chinese. It is a veritable compendium of knowledge on the history, structure and development of German libraries and information centres, interlibrary cooperation and the activities of the various librarianship and information science associations.

Visitors and partners from overseas in search of a short, up-to-date introduction will find this work indispensable. Students of librarianship and information science value "Portals" as a basic handbook and reliable course companion. For those employed in libraries and information centres, the new edition of this essential standard work constitutes an up-to-date review of developments in the German library landscape. Politicians interested in library issues will use it as a basic aid to understanding the important contribution of modern library work to the success of cultural and educational policy and to identifying significant characteristics of the information society. Library patrons will find here a wealth of useful information on holdings and services offered by German libraries and information centres.

The German library landscape is as vital and dynamic as ever. New developments in technology have led to the creation of new services and forms of information provision and the dissemination of knowledge:

- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID), enabling the introduction of self-service media check-out systems
- Library enquiry services for mobile telephones
- Large-scale digitization of public-domain works and their hosting via internet portals

For copyright reasons image is not available

**Claudia Lux, President of the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations**

- Individual digitization of works of particular cultural value and their display on mobile end-user devices
- Increased production of e-books and e-journals together with virtual full-text retrieval and e-book loan systems
- Implementation of Web 2.0 functionality and the active presence of library institutions on the social networks
- New and attractive buildings house innovative working and learning environments. Blanket W-LAN coverage facilitates multimedia-based learning and ensures that visitors flock to these new learning centres.

I would like to thank both the authors, Jürgen Seefeldt and Ludger Syré, for agreeing to revise "Portals to the Past and to the Future – Libraries in Germany" once more. Following the second German edition in 2003 and the third revised edition in 2007 (published as the 2nd English edition), this 4th German/3rd English edition has been completely revised. Many of the existing statistics have been carefully updated. The continuing advances of the last four years have

For copyright reasons image is not available

The two new and spectacular buildings in Ulm and Cottbus do impressive justice to the slogan of the 100th Convention of German Libraries "Libraries for the future – a future for libraries". The scholarly *Ulm City Library* (Baden-Württemberg), founded in 1518, was amalgamated with the city's Free Library and Reading Hall in 1968. In 1999 the Cologne-based architect Gottfried Böhm was commissioned to build a new City Library. The inauguration of the Central Library, a construction in pyramid form in glass and metal situated directly opposite the historic Ulm Minster, took place on April 15 2004. Over 350,000 books and media are housed in 6,700 m<sup>2</sup> floor area. The illustration shows the Central Library as it appeared on a flyer to mark the joint Bavarian and Baden-Württemberg Library Conference held in 2004 in Ulm and Neu-Ulm.

required the authors to re-write over a quarter of the text, particularly those sections dealing with the library system, inter-library cooperation, general operational procedures and online services.

The federal reform of 2006, which re-defined the relationship between central and state government, has brought with it considerable implications for the library sector. Three federal states have already enacted library laws as a result of the favourable response of the German Parliamentary Committee of Enquiry on Culture in Germany to librarians' demands. The introduction of bachelor and master's university degree courses in the wake of the Bologna process, coupled with the excellence programmes, has confronted university libraries with new challenges. There has been a resurgence and intensification of cooperation between the various partners in the education sector: Libraries cooperate with schools, adult education centres and cultural institutions at local authority level.

The authors write of the many new challenges facing all libraries in the wake of the rapid proliferation of digital audio, image, text and film data over the internet. Public libraries now offer access to a selection of electronic publications via the online lending service Onleihe. The German National Library has been commissioned to acquire network publications. Virtual subject

libraries have joined forces under the name Academic LinkShare to index relevant internet resources on a cooperative basis; the periodicals database lists more than 100,000 electronic journals. All this shows how successfully libraries and information centres are managing digital change.

Digitization activities have increased dramatically over the last four years, due not only to the financial support of the German Research Foundation but also to the promotion of Europeana by libraries themselves. The German Digital Library (Deutsche Digitale Bibliothek), founded at the end of 2010 with central government funding, aims to form a new central focus for access to culture and knowledge within the German-speaking world.

From the replacement of the cataloguing format MAB with MARC 21, plans for the introduction of the new international cataloguing rules RDA, metadata improvement, catalogue enrichment through the addition of tables of contents and cover text data through to the development of visual search techniques and the semantic web – it is clear in which direction changing library activity is heading. Virtual enquiry services are widely established in both academic and public libraries and modern forms of library marketing via FaceBook, YouTube and other social networks are on the march.

The BID as umbrella organization for all the librarianship organizations has also undergone changes. The promotion leaflet "21 Good Reasons for Good Libraries" was designed to bring



libraries to the attention of decision-makers in politics and other areas. Ensuring libraries are on the political agenda is one of the BID's most important goals. At a seminar held in Reutlingen in February 2011 on the subject of lobby work on behalf of libraries the chairmen of the member associations met to exchange ideas on the professionalization of lobbying activities and above all to explore new ways of funding these activities.

The BID is anxious to ensure that this book in its present revised form finds its way to the international library and information scene in as many languages as possible. We greatly hope that the Goethe Institute, as one of our members, is willing to continue its support for the past editions and with the help of its worldwide network will have the book translated into further languages and made available on its website. I would like to thank all the translators warmly for their outstanding contributions. Special thanks go to Diann Pelz-Rusch for translating the first edition and to Janet MacKenzie for revising the second English edition, which served as the basis for the many translations into other languages. I am delighted to be able to welcome the publication of this third English edition, based on the fourth German edition.

This work could not have been published without the unparalleled and highly professional cooperation of the George Olms press who undertook the publication of this latest edition. I am especially grateful to them and look forward to the continuation of this excellent relationship.

We also wish to thank all those who provided such a wealth of photographic material for "Portals", including the many new pictures. The combination of the interesting text and these optical highlights has resulted in a most attractive volume sure to receive international acclaim.

Finally, my thanks go once again to both authors, Jürgen Seefeldt and Ludger Syré. I wish them – and us – that this book will be widely read in Germany and throughout the world and that it will ensure that the excellent work of German libraries, information institutions and all who work there receives the acknowledgement it truly deserves.

Claudia Lux  
President of the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations  
(BID – Bibliothek & Information Deutschland)

For copyright reasons image is not available

*The Brandenburg Technical University has gained a new landmark and Cottbus town in Brandenburg a new link with the university campus in the unusual new University Library building by the architects Herzog and de Meuron from Basel. The revolutionary concept is based on the new information and media services structure introduced at Brandenburg Technical University. Various institutions, merged in 2004, are now all housed in the Information, Communications and Media Centre (IKMZ). The University Library was designated "Library of the Year 2006" in recognition of this concept.*

## German librarianship in figures 2009

<b>Libraries in total</b> (all categories, all institutions, full-time and voluntary staff, DBS participants only)		
Number of libraries incl. departmental and branch libraries		10,855
Total media collections (print and non-print media in media units)		362.0 m
Circulation (in media units)		466.0 m
Spending on media acquisitions (in euros)		398.0 m
Total number of staff (in FTE)		23,230
Total spending (materials and staffing costs, excluding special libraries)		1,713.0 m
Registered (active) users		10.82 m
Active inter-library loan orders in the German ILL system		4.20 m
<b>Academic general, regional and general libraries</b> (DBS participants only)		
Number of libraries incl. departmental libraries and other branch libraries (locations)		834
Total media collection (print and non-print in media units)		314.4 m
Print holdings (books, newspapers, periodicals, theses in media units)		238.5 m
Circulation (in media units)		96.0 m
Spending on media acquisition (in euros)		301.0 m
Total number of staff (in FTE)		11,847
Total spending (materials and staffing costs, in euros)		835.0 m
Active inter-library loan orders in the German ILL system		3.95 m
User work-places in total		98,788
Thereof computer workstations		15,922
Registered (active) users		2.85 m
<b>Public libraries (DBS participants, excluding school libraries)</b>		
	Run by full-time and voluntary staff, all institutions	Run by full-time staff only, all institutions
Number of libraries incl. branches (locations) (registered: 11.308)	10,021	3,427
Media collections (in media units)	123.4 m	96.1 m
Circulation (in media units)	369.7 m	332.8 m
Spending on media acquisitions (in euros)	97.4 m	82.7 m
Total spending (materials and staff costs) in euros	878.1 m	835.9 m
Library visitors	121.6m	109.1 m
Registered (active) users	8.0 m	6.2 m
Total number of staff (in FTE)	11,385	11,067
Active inter-library loan orders in the German ILL system	0.25 m	0.21m
All forms of activities	0.30 m	0.23 m
<b>Academic special libraries (DBS participants only)</b>		
No. of libraries incl. departmental and other branch libraries (registered: 2.225)		193
Total media collections (print and non-print media in media units)		28.3m
Print holdings (books, newspapers, periodicals in media units)		22.3 m
Circulation (in media units)		1.8 m
Spending on media acquisitions (in euros)		24.4 m
Total number of staff (in FTE)		934
Registered (active) users		0.08 m
Active inter-library loans in the German ILL system		0.08 m

Source: German library statistics 2009 (Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik – DBS),  
(figures updated to 31.12.2009)

# 1 HISTORY

## The Historical Development of Libraries in Germany

The reader striving for a real understanding of the structure and current situation of German librarianship should first be prepared to take a brief look at the history of Germany. A glance at an historical map of Germany through the ages will reveal the following two important details:

- The Central European territorial area, which united the German-speaking peoples, varied considerably in size through the centuries. By the end of the first millennium at the latest this area had given rise to the "German Empire", albeit with constantly changing borders.
- The area had always been divided into individual territories; initially their number had been almost infinite but by 1803 (or more accurately 1815) this number had been considerably reduced. The division into states continued after the foundation of the German Empire in 1871 and indeed determines the structure of the Federal Republic of Germany even today, for Germany has been a federal country with 16 "Länder" (states) since 1949.

Since Germany was never a centralized state, cultural life developed and evolved primarily in the individual territories and states, and therefore assumed a distinctly regional character. The Basic Law (*Grundgesetz*, the Constitution of the Federal Republic of Germany) refers back to this historical tradition when it defers the responsibility for almost all political matters of cultural and education importance to the *Länder*. This is to a large extent the reason why librarianship also developed primarily at regional level and has retained its basic decentralized structure up to the present day.

*The Library of Hildesheim Cathedral* (Lower Saxony), which can trace its origins back to the foundation of the Diocese in 815, possesses a Book of Hours written in the second half of the 15<sup>th</sup> century in Latin and French. The unique feature of the *Codex Rotundus* (H5 728) is its form: the 266 parchment pages are circular and have been bound together to form a round volume 9 cm in diameter.

## From the Middle Ages until Secularization

Even if libraries may have already existed in the larger cities of the Roman province of Germania, the history of German librarianship originates in the Middle Ages rather than in antiquity. As they spread from Italy and Spain in the 6<sup>th</sup> century A.D, monasteries developed into centres of book culture by virtue of the libraries (*armarium*) and copying rooms (*scriptorium*) they established and through which they acted as guardians of the classical traditions.

The first *cathedral libraries* on German soil were founded in the Carolingian period under the influence of the Irish and Anglo-Saxon missionaries in the 9<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries (examples in Cologne, Mainz, Würzburg, Freising), as were the *monastic libraries* (*Klosterbibliotheken*), among which Fulda, Lorsch, St. Gallen, Reichenau and Murbach were the largest, possessing several hundred volumes. By the end of the Middle Ages, the number of monastic libraries had multiplied considerably, primarily due to the foundation of the new Orders (Carthusians, Cistercians, Augustinian Canons, Premonstratensians). Those of the mendicants who chose to live in the cities (the Dominicans and the Franciscans) dedicated themselves especially to scholarship and teaching, and therefore viewed libraries as indispensable tools for their work.

Alongside the previous financiers of scholarly activities, school communities developed into

For copyright reasons image is not available

new centres for teaching and learning from the High Middle Ages onwards (900–1300); in time, they merged to form independent institutions of the *universitas magistrorum et scholarium* and were the breeding grounds of today's universities. In contrast to the university foundations in Italy (Salerno, Bologna), France (Paris), Spain (Salamanca) and England (Oxford), Germany's first universities were not founded until some 150 years later. However, this led to the creation of new collections of books – though still modest, since the professors kept the most important works in their private libraries and students either made notes or copied the texts from their teachers. The oldest university foundation in the German Empire at that time was in Prague (1348), followed by Vienna (1365), Heidelberg (1386), Cologne (1388) and Erfurt (1392).

Characteristic of the development of book culture since the late classical era is the transition from scroll to book form (Codex), and the use of parchment as a replacement for papyrus as material, later replaced by the cheaper paper. Books were stored in cabinets, later in niches and on long lecterns; the enlargement of the book collection was achieved by the copying and subsequent illustration of the manuscripts, and

a characteristic aspect was the dominance of the Latin language.

Because education lay firmly in the hands of the clergy during the Middle Ages, books were only very rarely owned by laypeople. Emperor Charlemagne (742–814) possessed a remarkable court library, which unfortunately was not destined to survive. Many of the post-Carolingian rulers were content with presenting magnificently decorated manuscripts as gifts to monasteries and cathedrals. Not until the nobility changed their attitude to education did writing and scholarship blossom, and collections of books could be found in the courts of kings, as well as in the aristocratic manors of the nobility.

From the 13<sup>th</sup> century onwards the culture of writing began to spread within the cities, but the number of private libraries owned by commoners remained small and not until the Humanistic period did they experience their first flowering in the form of the *scholars' library* (*Gelehrtenbibliothek*). A new type of library, the *Council Library* (*Ratsbücherei*), which served the municipal administration, emerged in the 14<sup>th</sup> century and these formed the basis for many of the later scholarly city libraries. An especially early example of this is the *Ratsbibliothek* of Nuremberg, first mentioned in the year 1370.

With the discovery of printing by Johannes Gutenberg in the middle of the 15<sup>th</sup> century and the previous transition from parchment to paper as the most usual writing material around one hundred years earlier, the stage was set for the broader-based and accelerated growth of library collections. The swift and vigorous spread of printing gave flight to the spread of the ideas of the Reformation, which in turn resulted in the rise of many libraries in schools, churches and in the cities. On the other hand, the Reformation

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *Evangelary of Henry the Lion* (*Evangeliar Heinrichs des Löwen*), written about 1188 in the monastery of Helmarshausen and commissioned by the Guelphic Duke, is considered one of the most outstanding achievements of medieval book art. The parchment manuscript (Cod. Guelf. 105 Noviss. 2<sup>o</sup>, here Fol. 19r) is held by the Duke August Library (*Herzog-August Bibliothek*) in Wolfenbüttel (Lower Saxony) and has four joint owners (the States of Lower Saxony and Bavaria, the Federal Government and the Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation).

With its 1,809 hand-coloured woodcuts, the *Schedelsche Weltchronik*, printed in 1493 by Anton Koberger in Nuremberg, is one of the most richly-illustrated works from the early printing period. Its author, the Nuremberg doctor and humanist Dr. Hartmann Schedel, owned the largest private library in the city at the time. The illustration shows the copy owned by the Court Library of the House of Hohenzollern (*Fürstlich Hohenzollernsche Hofbibliothek*) in Sigmaringen (Baden-Württemberg).

For copyright reasons image is not available

also led to the demise of the monastic libraries in many areas of Germany following the dissolution of a large number of monasteries; certain works of medieval theology, considered “useless”, were destroyed.

The Counter Reformation led to a wave of newly established libraries, due in this case primarily to the Jesuits who required their theological colleges to have libraries. It seems that the Jesuits were the first order to make the transition from the *lectern library* (*Pultbibliothek*) to the *hall library* (*Saalbibliothek*). The confessional schism was transferred to the universities; examples of Protestant universities are to be found in Marburg (1527) and Gießen (1607), and of Catholic universities in Dillingen (1551) and Würzburg (1582). The libraries of the German universities were admittedly in a pretty desolate condition. Student numbers fluctuated considerably but at no time until the end of the 18<sup>th</sup> century were there more than 4,500 students within the German Empire.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries also mark the beginnings of the first *court libraries* (*Hofbibliotheken*), which can partially be attributed to Humanistic efforts to encourage the spread of education and partially to the rulers’ desire for status symbols, and their further development remained closely linked to the bibliophile bent and personal interests of the ruler himself. In addition to the Emperor’s Court Library in Vienna (officially founded in 1368), the court libraries in Munich (founded in 1558) and in Dresden (founded ca. 1556) are of note, as are the collections of the Heidelberg Electors, which were combined in 1558 to form the *Library of the Palatinate* (*Bibliotheca Palatina*), the best-known German library of the era.

After a period of decline during the Thirty Years’ War (1618–1648), it was not until the

The gold binding around the *Berthold Missal* (*Cod. bibl. 4<sup>o</sup> 32*), owned by the Württemberg State Library (*Württembergische Landesbibliothek*) in Stuttgart (Baden-Württemberg), was made in the second quarter of the 12<sup>th</sup> century, probably in a Korbung workshop. The portrayal of the enthroned Christ can be traced back to Byzantine designs familiar from the style of book illustration practiced by the Monastery of Reichenau on Lake Constance.

## HISTORY

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Library of the Benedictine Monastery of Ottoberen (*Bibliothek des Benediktinerklosters Ottoberen*) in the Bavarian regional district Allgäu is an excellent example of a Baroque "Hall Library". Bookshelves are arranged on the perimeter of the room and extend upwards to the gallery, which is supported by 44 marble columns. In the centre of the hall stands a statue of Pallas Athene, Greek goddess of wisdom.

For copyright reasons image is not available

18<sup>th</sup> century that library construction experienced an upswing along the lines of libraries in other countries. Magnificently decorated baroque hall libraries, which were established in both monasteries and castles, reflected the tendency to combine practical requirements with aesthetic considerations. As a result of the growth in book production, library catalogues increased in significance.

Characteristic of the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> centuries was the flourishing of the court libraries (*Hofbibliotheken*), which were founded by almost all the German princes and rulers of the time. One of the most important princely collections was established in the small town of Wolfenbüttel, seat of the court of the Duchy of Brunswick-Lüneburg. The Elector's court library in Berlin, founded in 1661 and from 1781 known as the Royal Library, developed into and remained the most important German library right up to the period before the Second World War; today it is the State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*).

Since the dawning of humanism, the number of *private libraries* belonging to writers and scholars had increased by leaps and bounds. The most important of the new universities founded during the Enlightenment was the University of Göttingen (1737). Established to provide assistance to researchers, the University Library pursued a carefully selective acquisition programme and afforded greatest priority to the newest publications needed by researchers. The books in this library were broadly classified by subject area. The first so-called Reform University, the University in Halle, was opened in 1694 and soon had more students than any other German higher education institution.

The greatest ever redistribution of book collections resulted from the secularization of

In 1914 the Royal Library in Berlin (*Königliche Bibliothek zu Berlin*) was re-housed in a new building in the Wilhemine style (architect: Ernst von Ihne) located on the boulevard Unter den Linden and also housing the Royal Academy of Science and the University Library. The showcase of this building was the cupola hall. This photograph shows one of the eight inner courtyards with a side entrance.

1803. This took place in southern and western Germany and was conducted along similar lines to the Reformation carried out by the Protestant rulers further north. The result was the sweeping expropriation of ecclesiastical property and its transfer to the local rulers. The book collections of the dissolved monasteries were integrated into the state libraries, predominately the court and university libraries.

### From the 19<sup>th</sup> Century to the Second World War

The Napoleonic era at the beginning of the 19<sup>th</sup> century put an end not only to many of the small states in Germany but also to numerous smaller universities. Prussia forged ahead with the development of a new university landscape, a series of far-reaching state reforms transformed higher education, and the idea of the modern lending library, which influenced the development of the academic library in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, was born.

In 1871 a fundamental reform of German librarianship took place, again in Prussia, and spread rapidly. At the same time there began a period of active library building. Stacks were established as the predominate form of storage for the rapidly increasing book collections as the sciences blossomed and new disciplines emerged. Opening times were extended; lending regulations were liberalized. In order to make the collections of all the libraries of the institutions of higher education in a particular city available to the users, cooperation and coordination schemes were initiated, resulting in the Prussian Union Catalogue (*Preußischer Gesamtkatalog*), the Berlin Titles of Printed Books (*Berliner Titeldrucke*), the Prussian Cataloguing Rules for the Alphabetical Catalogue or Prussian Instructions

(*Preußische Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge – PI*), as well as the Reference Office (*Auskunftsbüro*) and the interlibrary loans system.

The rapid growth in book production forced libraries to base their acquisitions policy on a more disciplined selection and led later to the establishment of subject-centred collections and the exchange of holdings within the interlibrary loan framework. Furthermore, the rise in the number of copies printed – thanks to technical advances in paper and book production (invention of the machine press, use of wood-based paper) – and the consequent reduction in book prices after about 1840 all had a lasting effect on libraries.

From the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century onwards, continually increasing subject specialization in the universities led to the formation of quick-reference collections which in time developed into independent *faculty and departmental libraries* (*Institutsbibliotheken*) alongside the *main university library* (*Zentralbibliothek*). The continuing specialization in research coupled with the rising number of new publications also led to the emergence of a new type of library both within and beyond the university, namely, the *special library* (*Spezialbibliothek*); the era of the general library providing a comprehensive service had (at least in theory) passed. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century, separate technical universities were established to serve the needs of rising technology; they

The State Library of Bamberg (*Staatsbibliothek Bamberg*) in Bavaria owes its foundation in 1803 to the necessity of amalgamating the book collections of the secularized monastery and ecclesiastical foundation of the former Bishopric of Bamberg with the library of the University, which had also been dissolved. Since 1965 the Library has been located in the former royal “New Residence” of the bishop with its splendid Baroque rooms. This photo shows the Carlsberg Library occupying the so-called Dominican Shelving. In 1972 Bamberg once more became a university town.

For copyright reasons image is not available

## HISTORY

For copyright reasons image is not available

Following the English and French examples, the German "hall libraries" also mastered the transition to the "stack library" system; the physical division into reading room, stacks and administration prevailed. A good example is the modern functional architecture (architect: Ludwig von Tiedemann) of the *University and Regional Library of Halle* (Saxony-Anhalt). The upper levels were exclusively devoted to stack accommodation, the lower levels partially so. The Library, built in 1880, was restored between 1995 and 1999 and is a protected historic building.

boasted purpose-designed libraries (for instance, in Aachen, Berlin-Charlottenburg, Dresden, and Karlsruhe). Not only the government but also commercial companies, clubs, societies and associations amassed a number of significant special collections covering most aspects of social and economic life.

The transfer of private property from the princes to the state following the revolution of 1918/1919 was characteristic of the further development of the court and regional libraries (*Hof- or Landesbibliotheken*). The princes had admittedly already often been willing to open their court libraries to the scholarly public. However, many of them could not keep pace with the increasing number of publications, so that the growth of their libraries stagnated.

Following the French Revolution, the idea of a national library (*Nationalbibliothek*) emerged in many European countries, but failed to have any lasting impact in Germany either in 1848 or in 1871 following the establishment of the German Empire. The foundation of the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig in 1912 remained a private initiative of the Association of the German Book Trade (*Börsenverein der Deutschen Buchhändler*). But at least this led to the creation of a central point for the acquisition of all German-language publications which have been collected in their entirety since 1913 and indexed in the *German National Bibliography* (*Deutsche Nationalbibliographie*).

The present stacks of the *University and Regional Library of Halle* (Universitäts und Landesbibliothek Halle) consist of free-standing iron supports extending over four floors and supporting iron mezzanine ceilings and wooden shelving. The open grating of the ceilings allows additional light to enter through the glass roof.



The reading circles and reading societies which had already formed in the second half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century alongside the *commercial lending libraries* can be regarded as the predecessors of the public libraries, satisfying the reading interests of the upper middle class with regard to educational literature, fiction and non-fiction. In 1828, a school library was opened in Großenhain in Saxony, which was later commissioned by the municipality to further the cause of general education, and is thus regarded today as the first-ever public *city library (Stadtbibliothek)* in Germany.

Inspired by the idea of general education, a wave of library foundation swept through Germany from the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century onward, sustained by the liberal societies, churches and the workers' movement. In many cities, libraries for the general public (*Volksbüchereien*) were established. However, only under the influence of the American *public libraries* did the concept of a publicly accessible library for all gain acceptance, leading in many places to the merging of the former city library (*Stadtbibliothek*) and the library for the general public (*Volksbücherei*) to form the so-called "standard library" (*Einheitsbücherei*). There was a public book hall movement to which such cities as Freiburg, Berlin-Charlottenburg, Essen, and Hamburg belonged as the first cities to host public libraries. At the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, a counter-movement developed following disagreement on the general direction the movement should be taking. This counter-movement aimed to guide and teach the readers, and involved conducting a readers' advisory interview at the check-out desk instead of allowing free access to the literature as in the *Einheitsbücherei*.

During the Weimar Republic (1919–1933), steps were taken to transfer responsibility for the public libraries to the local communities (*Kom-*

The *Deutsche Bücherei* was jointly founded in 1912 by the city of Leipzig, centre of the book and publishing industry in the German Empire, the Kingdom of Saxony, and the Association of German Booksellers. Both the interior and exterior architecture of the building on the square *Deutscher Platz*, inaugurated in 1916, reflect early Italian Renaissance and Art Nouveau elements (Design: Oskar Pusch).

For copyright reasons image is not available

A German national library evolved neither from the Library of the German National Assembly in 1848/49 in St. Paul's Church in Frankfurt (donated by a number of individual publishers) nor from the Parliamentary Library (*Reichstagsbibliothek*) of the German Empire, founded in 1872. This photo shows the Library Hall (*Bibliothekssaal*) in the *Reichstag* Building in Berlin in about 1895 (architect: Paul Wallot). This room and the Library collections were destroyed in the Second World War.

For copyright reasons image is not available

## HISTORY

For copyright reasons image is not available

The ensemble of buildings making up the Library of the Hanseatic City of Lübeck (*Bibliothek der Hansestadt Lübeck*) in Schleswig-Holstein – a scholarly library with integrated public library – comprises buildings from the Middle Ages and the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. The neo-gothic library hall, adjacent to the former Franciscan monastery, dates from 1877 and reflects the architectural style of the Middle Ages.

For copyright reasons image is not available

Up until the complete renovation of the building in 2010 the wall above the circulation desk of the City and Regional Library of Potsdam (*Stadt- und Landesbibliothek Potsdam*, in the State of Brandenburg), formerly a general scientific library, was adorned by a mural dating from the 1980's. Potsdam's central library, modernized after German Reunification, reflects the transition from East German interior design to the West German library standards of the 21st century. Facilities include an Art Library, a Music Library and special collections on Brandenburg and Gottfried Benn.

*munalisierung der Volksbüchereien*). Since many of the previous funding agencies or societies could no longer afford to support their libraries, the entire sphere of public librarianship – to an even greater extent than that of academic libraries – fell into the hands of the National Socialists after 1933.

The National Socialist government (1933–1945) suppressed the right of free expression, and curtailed freedom not only in literature, art and culture but in all other areas of public life as well. Nothing illustrates the total claim to power of the Nazi Regime more obviously than the book burning in May 1933, the introduction of censorship, and the flight of numerous intellectuals into exile. The confessional public libraries belonging to the churches, which had developed since the second half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century and were supported by the *Borromäusverein (BV)* and the St. Michael's Association in the Catholic Church, or by the Inner Mission of the Protestant Church, were subjected to even greater repression during the National Socialist period.

### From Divided to United Germany

Not only did the Second World War (1939–1945) cause enormous damage to library collections and buildings; its long-term consequences also led to the division of Germany and to far-reaching changes in the library landscape. The collections of the Prussian State Library, which had been evacuated during the War, were in part returned to Berlin, but remained divided and would not be re-united until almost half a century later. In addition to the German Library (*Deutsche Bücherei*) in Leipzig, and again on the initiative of the Association of the German Book Trade, a West German parallel institution was founded at the end of 1946 as the German Library (*Deutsche Bibliothek*) in Frankfurt am Main to serve as the focal point for the acquisition of German literature publications and as the national bibliographic centre of West Germany.

Librarianship in higher education experienced a turbulent upturn in West Germany after the 1960's, furthered primarily by the incipient educational expansion of the time. A wave of new universities was founded in the Federal Republic of Germany, existing universities were extended,

new types of higher education institutions (*Gesamthochschule, Fachhochschule*) were established and the technical universities expanded and upgraded to full universities. Another result of the expansion and specialization taking place in science and research could also be seen in the establishment of Central Subject Libraries (*Zentrale Fachbibliotheken*) for the applied sciences (technology, economics / business, medicine and agriculture), and in the founding of additional special libraries. Further favourable factors were the support for library projects offered by the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*), specifically in the field of cooperative acquisitions within the framework of the Special Subject Fields Collection Plan (*Sondersammelgebietsplan*), the building of new university libraries with large open-access collections arranged in classified order, the development of textbook collections and information centres, the automation of library work-flows and procedures, and the networking of all library functions.

After 1945 public libraries slowly completed the transition from the idea of educating the

public through the advisory (*Thekenbücherei*) libraries to libraries with free access to the stacks (*Freihandaufstellung*). In the field of collection development, the previous dominance of *belletristic* literature made way for educational and vocational literature, and leisure reading; in addition, more non-fiction and scientific works were acquired, and the collections were rounded out with various forms of multimedia. Special departments were established for target user groups, children and young people being an especially important target group for the public libraries (*Öffentliche Bibliothek – ÖB*). In the large metropolitan cities, literature provision was ex-

The Library building on the boulevard Unter den Linden of Berlin's State Library has been undergoing comprehensive renovation and extension over the last few years. It houses the historical and special collections including one of the largest collections of maps in the world. This photograph shows a world map from 1633 published in Amsterdam by Mercator and Hondus and entitled "Atlas depicting the whole world and all the countries and provinces therein".

For copyright reasons image is not available

panded to form a system consisting of a central library, branch libraries, and mobile libraries.

Public libraries developed new forms of cooperation, although these could not be compared in extent and depth to those already well-established in academic librarianship. Cooperation between these two sectors also increased, beginning with interlibrary loans. With the publication of the Library Plan '73 (*Bibliotheksplan '73*), both sectors (academic and public) could at last be perceived as a single unit and efforts to strengthen cooperational ties were slowly intensified.

In the second German State, the German Democratic Republic (GDR, 1949–1990), both the State Library in Berlin and the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig retained their central functions. After the abolition of the federal state structure in 1952, the regional libraries still in existence were redesigned as so-called *general academic libraries* of the regions (*Wissenschaftliche Allgemeinbibliotheken der Bezirke*); only the Saxonian State Library (*Sächsische Landesbibliothek*) in Dresden retained its former name. The public libraries in the cities and counties were designated *state general libraries* (*Staatliche Allgemeinbibliotheken*). By the time the GDR was dissolved, there were in addition to the libraries of the older universities (Berlin, Greifswald, Halle, Jena, Leipzig, Rostock), over 50 other libraries belonging to institutions of higher education, colleges and engineering schools,

many of which had been newly founded during the GDR period.

Scholarly literature in the GDR was for the most part provided by the libraries of the research institutes belonging to the Academy of the Sciences and by the Central Subject Libraries. The GDR government pursued its goal not only of maintaining a professionally-run library in every city, but also of providing each community or district with a public library and establishing a nationwide library network. By the end of the 1980's, over 600 Rural Central Libraries (*ländliche Zentralbibliotheken*) had been established. The importance of these rural libraries in encouraging reading among children and young people as a meaningful leisure pursuit can hardly be over-estimated.

The reunification of Germany in 1990 meant an extensive, deep-seated structural change, if not a new beginning for librarianship, in the five newly-created Eastern German States and Berlin, and was not without consequences for librarianship in the Western German States. After being separated for over 40 years, librarianship in West and East Germany once more fused together, best demonstrated in the reunification of both systems' libraries. Libraries at two (or indeed three) locations in Frankfurt am Main, Leipzig and Berlin combined to form the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*), known from 1990 to mid-2006 as the German Library (*Die Deutsche Bibliothek*) and including the Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*) and the Central and Regional Library of Berlin (*Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin*).

After 1990, great efforts were made to compensate for the deficits resulting from the GDR era in both academic and public libraries. These

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *University Library in Leipzig (Saxony)* was re-opened after ten years of restoration work. Two-thirds of the Bibliotheca Albertina, erected in 1891 in the neo-Renaissance style by architect Arwed Rossbach, were destroyed in the final days of the Second World War and the rest was left to dilapidate over the next decades. By roofing-over the inner courtyards, new reading areas were created. A total of 400,000 volumes can be consulted on open access by the Library's users at 700 work-spaces, some in the reconstructed historic reading room.

chiefly consisted of improving the physical state of the library buildings, re-uniting separated book collections and purchasing up-to-date technical equipment.

Many library buildings were systematically renovated and at the same time partially extended between 1990 and 2007 (the University Library in Leipzig, the main library of the Francke Foundations (*Franckesche Stiftungen*) in Halle, the University and State Library of Halle). Some are still waiting for the completion of essential renovation work (such as the State Library in Berlin, Haus Unter den Linden) or some other solution to their space problems (new building of the University Library of the Humboldt University of Berlin). In many cities completely new library buildings were built, such as the university libraries in Erfurt, Frankfurt an der Oder and Greifswald, the Thuringian University and State Library in Jena, the Saxonian State Library – State and University Library of Dresden, the university libraries in Cottbus and Weimar, the Library of the University of Applied Sciences in Fürstenwalde and the State Library of Mecklenburg-Vorpommern in Schwerin (*Landesbibliothek Mecklenburg-Vorpommern*). Following the extension of the Duchess Anna Amalia Library (*Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek*) in Weimar, a disastrous fire dealt a cruel blow to the modernization of the historic buildings in 2004. Numerous public-libraries, which in GDR times had been housed in inadequate buildings with poor furnishings and equipment, have received new homes in unused, older buildings in the city centres, for instance, the city libraries in Annaberg-Buchholz,

Brandenburg, Eisenach, Fürstenwalde, Guben and Schkeuditz.

The political and ideological orientation of East Germany was reflected in its library collections; many could be discarded after reunification. On the other hand, the most important books and journals were not available in many subject areas, and in the area of literary fiction the works of those authors officially considered undesirable in the GDR were conspicuous by their absence. Academic and research libraries received funding from various programmes for supplementing their collections soon after reunification while public libraries were essentially left dependent on the modest resources of their communities.

The main aim was to bring the GDR libraries up to the contemporary technological standard as rapidly as possible, to set up self-service copiers (which had not hitherto been available anywhere in the GDR), to introduce data processing and automate library work-flow procedures and book processing. Only then could these libraries contribute to the union catalogues and national cooperative schemes (such as the national union catalogue of periodicals). Integration into the German library system through the interlibrary loan network was effected almost immediately after reunification in 1990, but only later were the libraries able to participate in the German Research Foundation (DFG) special subject fields programme or other projects.

Although Erfurt University is Germany's youngest university, its roots reach back to the late Middle Ages. When it commenced its academic activities in 1392, it did so as only the third university in what is now the Federal Republic of Germany. It was closed in 1816 and re-established in 1994. In the year 2000, the University and Research Library of Erfurt/Gotha (*Universitäts- und Forschungsbibliothek Erfurt/Gotha*) in Thuringia, responsible for the humanities-based university's literature and information services, moved into a new building in the centre of the future University Campus (architects: Koch, Vogt and Zschomack). Around 700,000 volumes on open access and 240,000 in the stacks are housed in a total area of around 15,000 m<sup>2</sup>, which also provides 360 work-spaces for the University's 4,000 students.

For copyright reasons image is not available

In academic and research librarianship, many libraries were completely redesigned and restructured, sometimes even renamed. In addition to the older universities mentioned above, new universities were founded or old ones re-chartered, such as in Erfurt, Frankfurt/Oder, Magdeburg and Potsdam. The type of institution known in West Germany as the University of Applied Sciences (*Fachhochschule*) was introduced into the former GDR after 1991. The Academies of the Sciences in Berlin and Leipzig with their libraries and archives was re-constituted. East German Central Libraries were virtually deprived of their function as the parallel institutions in West Germany were disproportionately better stocked. The same was true of the libraries of many government administrative bodies. After the dissolution of the general academic libraries, the state libraries were parted from their respective local city libraries and assumed regional functions for the states (*Länder*) reconstituted in the 1990's; in Federal *Länder* without a state library the regional functions fell to the university libraries – a double function which is evident also in their names (such as in Halle/Saxony-Anhalt, Jena/Thuringia). The Saxonian State Library in Dresden was merged with the Library of the Dresden Technical University in 1996 and physically united with it in 2002 in a new building.

As a result of the difficult state of the public finances, the city libraries, abandoned to the care of their local authorities in 1990, entered a crisis much more acute than that of the academic and research libraries. In particular, the smaller libraries in rural areas had to be closed, along with the almost 3,000 libraries of the trade unions (*Betriebsbüchereien*) run by full or part-time staff. However, some compensation was afforded through the introduction of a large number of new mobile libraries in rural areas, for many years funded by central government. A radical programme of staff cuts began in libraries, similar to the one already implemented in government offices and companies. The demand for "another kind" of literature and new media could – at first – only be met with great difficulty. The State Service Centres for Public Libraries (*Staatliche Büchereifachstellen*) – completely unheard of in the GDR – had to be newly established and in the years that followed these

took on the job of systematically redeveloping public libraries, thus giving new impetus to the task of bringing professional standards into line in all the states of the former West and East Germany. However, many successful projects have been endangered through the dismantling of these service centres by the Ministries of Education and Culture.

The German Library Institute (*Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut* – DBI) in Berlin played an instrumental role in the integration of West and East German librarianship. It had been founded by law in 1978 and expanded following German re-unification. Its objective was to provide national interdisciplinary research facilities and a variety of other services. The Institute, which had been jointly financed by the Federal Government and the states, was dissolved by law in 2000 on the recommendation of the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*) and ceased its activities at the end of 2002. German librarianship thus lost its only central state library infrastructure institution. Some of the DBI's functions, such as the technical maintenance of the national union periodicals database (*Zeitschriftendatenbank*) and the publication of the professional journal *Bibliotheksdienst*, have been continued by other institutions, but other activities have had to be completely terminated.

All attempts to establish a new service centre for libraries have so far failed but the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education and Cultural Affairs (*Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder*) has been induced to commission the non-profit German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband - dbv*) dbv to set up an Library Expertise Network (*Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken* – knb). The knb, funded jointly by the federal states, has been responsible since 2004 for coordinating a number of national activities on a decentralized basis. It supports planning and decision-making processes at state and national level, aims to strengthen the role of libraries in an international context and promotes international relations. In the fall of 2006 the knb inaugurated the "Bibliotheksportal.de", a library internet portal designed to make available to the general public basic facts and figures on all aspects of the German library system.

## 2 EDUCATION AND CULTURE

### Germany's Political, Administrative and Organizational Structure

A basic grasp of the political, administrative and organizational structure of Germany, including its school and higher education system, is an essential prerequisite for an understanding of the structure and organization of German librarianship.

The Federal Republic of Germany was founded in May 1949, four years after the end of the Second World War, as a federal state on a democratic and parliamentary basis. Since the reunification of the two German states on October 3, 1990, it has consisted of 16 Federal States or *Länder*: the area states Baden-Württemberg, Bavaria, Brandenburg, Hesse, Mecklenburg-Vorpommern, Lower Saxony, North Rhine-Westphalia, the Rhineland-Palatinate, the Saarland, Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt, Schleswig-Holstein and Thuringia, together with the city-states of Berlin,

Some basic figures	
Sources: Central and State Statistical Offices 2010, figures updated to 31.12.2009	
Population	81.76 m
Non-Germans	8.8%
Percentage of population with immigrant background	19.1%
Area	357.111 km <sup>2</sup>
Residents per km <sup>2</sup>	229
No. of towns and local authorities	11,448
Gross national income (GNI)	2,430.9 bn €
Gross national income per resident (GNIPC)	30,875 €
Percentage of population unemployed	6.7%
Total number of inhabitants in employment	40.65 m
Public service employees	4.55 m
Public revenue (federal, state, local)	1.02 tn
Total public spending on education, science and culture (federal, state, local)	99.1 bn €
Total public spending on education, science and culture as % of gross domestic product	4.13%



The 16 Federal States of the Federal Republic of Germany with their capital cities and coats of arms

Bremen and Hamburg. The capital city of Germany is Berlin.

The principles of German constitutional law are laid down in the Basic Law (*Grundgesetz* – GG). The federal principle allows responsibility for state-level functions to be assigned to the individual states (*Länder*) and their lower-level bodies, allowing greater emphasis to be placed on special regional factors.

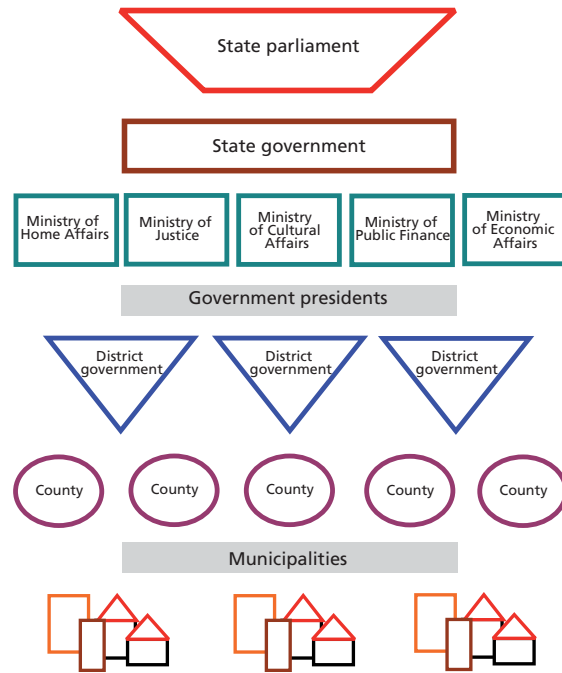
The structure of the constitutional organs of the Federal Government and the *Länder* is determined by the classical separation of powers:

- the Federal and State Parliaments (Bundestag, Landtage)
- the President of the Federal Republic, the Federal Government, the governments of the *Länder*
- the Federal Courts and the state courts (*Landesgerichte*).

## EDUCATION AND CULTURE

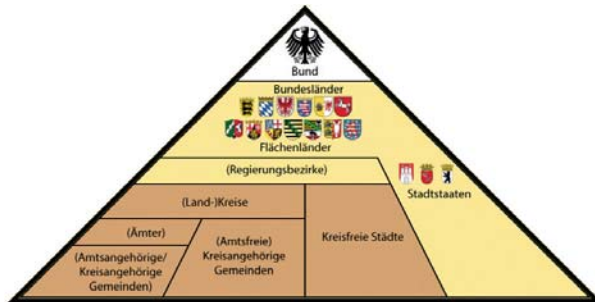
The parliamentary system of the Federal Republic of Germany makes provision for two representational bodies: The Federal Parliament (*Bundes-tag*) with around 600 directly-elected representatives of the people, and a second chamber, the Federal Council (*Bundesrat*), with delegates nominated by the state governments of the 16 *Länder*

The *Bundesrat* takes an active part in the legislative decision-making processes affecting the interests of the *Länder*. The Federal Chancellor (*Bundeskanzler*) is responsible for determining basic policy guidelines and for appointing the federal ministers. Head of state is the Federal President (*Bundespräsident*), elected not directly by the people but by the Federal Assembly (*Bundesversammlung*); members of this body include the entire Federal Parliament and a similar number of others, nominated by the state parliaments.



### Administrative structure of a Federal State

The Basic Law (*Grundgesetz*) specifies a bottom-up structure for state and administration, i.e. from local (*Gemeinde*) to state (*Länder*) to federal (*Bund*) level. The individual states are responsible for regional legislation, whereas laws on all matters of national interest are the prerogative of the Federal Government. The Basic Law (amended in 2006 as a result of the major federalism reform) is supplemented by the Unification Treaty (*Einigungsvertrag*) of August 31, 1990 between the German Democratic Republic (GDR) and the Federal Republic of Germany; this treaty is part of the German constitutional framework and has direct bearing on German librarianship. Administrative duties are primarily the responsibility of the local authorities and the *Länder*. The dispensation of justice is in the hands of the *Länder* or to be more precise of the state courts (*Landesgerichte*). The High Courts are, however, federal institutions. Of these, the highest – the Supreme Court or Federal Constitutional Court (*Bundesverfassungsgericht*) – is based in Karlsruhe. The municipalities, *Länder* and Federal Government all have



The figure shows the three-tier administrative structure of a German federal state in the form of a pyramid.

Bund	Federal government
Bundesländer	Federal states
Flächenländer	Area states
Stadtstaaten	City states
Regierungsbezirke	Administrative districts
(Land-)Kreise	Counties
Ämter	Municipal alliances
(Amts)angehörige/ Kreisangehörige Gemeinden)	Alliance member municipalities
(Amts)freie Kreis- angehörige Gemeinden	Municipalities
Kreisfreie Städte	Non-county cities



their own areas of sovereignty; in addition, the *Länder* also have their own constitutions. They draw their income from their statutory share of the total tax revenue.

The responsibility for all cultural affairs, for science and the arts, as well as for schools and education, lies fundamentally with the *Länder*. The cities and communities participate in this "cultural sovereignty" according to the principles of "local cultural autonomy" (*kommunale Kulturautonomie*). There is no "library law" in Germany. However the states Thuringia, Saxony-Anhalt and Hesse have already enacted library legislation at federal state level and the states North Rhine-Westphalia and Schleswig-Holstein plan to follow. There is no Federal Ministry of Culture either, though in 1998 the Federal Government combined the remaining central cultural functions and placed them under the aegis of a Minister of State, the Federal Commissioner for Culture and Media (*Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien* – BKM). The Commissioner also represents the Federal Government in international cultural affairs.

Following the amendment to the Basic Law, which came into effect on Sept 1<sup>st</sup> 2006 as a result of the federalism reform, the legal responsibility for cultural matters was re-apportioned between the federal and state governments. As a consequence, federal responsibility for cultural affairs was severely curtailed whilst responsibility for educational matters was also drastically reduced. Although responsibility for the lifelong learning project still lies with the central government, cultural programmes generally no longer receive central funding.

The fact that the legislative and administrative processes within the field of cultural policy are largely centralized, coupled with the greatly differing financial capacities of the individual federal states, necessitates not only a certain amount of coordination and cooperation but also a common funding procedure. To help implement these joint activities the states and central government have established a number of institutions, the most important of which are the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG), the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschafts-*

*rat* - WR) and the Joint Science Conference (*Gemeinsame Wissenschaftskonferenz von Bund und Ländern* – GWK). In order to coordinate important common educational and cultural political activities the federal states have founded the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education and Cultural Affairs (*Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder* – KMK), while in 2005 the Local Government Association for Municipal Administration (*Kommunale Gemeinschaftsstelle für Verwaltungsmanagement*) was set up to deal with the management, control and organization of local government administration.

Since some projects in the field of science and research continue to be of national significance, the Federal Government does still have limited influence over so-called Joint Issues (*Gemeinschaftsaufgaben*). These primarily concern higher education building, planning and development, together with the Framework Agreement on Research Funding (*Rahmenvereinbarung Forschungsförderung*) drawn up by the Leibniz Scientific Association (*Wissenschaftsgemeinschaft Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz* – WGL). Some of these federal and state institutions and framework agreements have direct consequences for librarianship: The Federal Ministry of Education and Research (BMBF) is responsible for funding the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG) together with a number of database and pilot projects, including the development of digital libraries and the continued promotion of the subject-oriented information centres (*Fachinformationszentren*).

Whilst the federal states regard the changes to the Basic Law in 2006 as a reinforcement of their cultural and educational autonomy, many critics fear that developments will lead to parochial squabbling, significant cutbacks in cultural and educational spending and a diversity of standards at the expense of much-needed harmonization.

The legislative process in the individual *Länder* is the task of the state parliaments, which in the area states are called *Landtage*, in the city-states (Hamburg, Bremen, Berlin) the House of Representatives (*Abgeordnetenhaus* or *Bürgerschaft*). The political and administrative government of the *Länder* is the task of the individual state

governments (*Landesregierungen*), which are headed by a state prime minister (*Ministerpräsident*) or governing mayor (*Regierender Bürgermeister*). Within the 8 to 10-member cabinet or senate, the Ministry of Culture (*Kultusministerium*) or Ministry of Science (*Wissenschaftsministerium*) is generally responsible for the public and academic libraries in that state. In the larger *Länder* there are a number of state institutions at intermediate level (district authorities, regional boards, supervisory, structural and approval bodies etc.) with responsibility for particular regional or political issues, e.g. the so-called administrative districts (*Regierungsbezirke*). One of the main tasks of these authorities is the state supervision of the local authorities (*Kommunalaufsicht*). Most *Länder* have established State Service Centres for Public Libraries (*Staatlichen Büchereistellen*), also called professional centres (*Fachstellen*), advisory centres (*Beratungsstellen*) or library centres (*Büchereizentralen*); for the most part, these operate at administrative district level. In those states which have abolished administrative districts or which operate a centralized funding system, the state library service centres act at state level. In the area states, the counties (*Landkreise*) and the towns with county status (*kreisfreie Städte*) or county towns (*Stadtkreise*) act as lowest-level administrative units, in addition to their main function as local agencies of self-government.

In principle, the towns and local authorities are responsible for all public political functions within their territorial jurisdiction unless otherwise regulated by state or federal law. The concept of self-government includes certain obligatory functions, such as the payment of social welfare assistance or the maintenance of primary and secondary schools, alongside a number of so-called "voluntary" (*freiwillige*) services which each authority can provide as it sees fit without fear of redress. Among these voluntary services is the whole cultural sector including theatres, orchestras, museums and libraries. Political representatives at municipal level, such as the local council (*Gemeinderat*), the city council (*Stadtrat*) or the mayor (*Bürgermeister*) are elected in local elections. Committees are then nominated for particular areas; usually a cultural committee

(*Kulturausschuss*) is politically responsible for local libraries in their function as important public service. Local government administration is divided – depending on the size of the community and its organizational structure – into departments (*Dezernate*), subject areas (*Fachbereiche*) and offices (*Ämter*). The local public library may have the status of an independent unit or it may alternatively be subordinate to the local school or cultural department. The same applies to museums, archives, community colleges, and music academies. Many local authorities have begun to hive off some local functions from central administration and convert them into independent business enterprises (*Eigenbetriebe*) on a new commercial basis. Among these are several larger and medium-sized libraries. These independent enterprises are run by a works management and works committee on which the local council is generally represented. The state is financed at federal, state and local level by various forms of taxation. The local authorities and *Länder* receive a certain percentage of the overall taxation revenue, either as freely disposable or as earmarked income. The local authorities also have the power to set the level of their own local taxes (such as corporation and property taxes and fees), whilst the counties draw their revenue from their member councils. Expenditure on locally and state-funded libraries is covered by the overall state revenue. The allocation of expenditure and income resources is determined on an annual basis by the parliaments and recorded in the state budget plan (*Haushaltsplan*). Plans also exist to reform the financial administrative system in the wake of administrative modernization measures already in progress and expected to lead not only to an increase in service orientation, but also to new organizational structures and enhanced cost transparency within the public sector. To date, nearly all local authorities have transferred their financial auditing system from the old cameralistic basis to modern double-entry bookkeeping and budgetary methods.

## Educational Institutions

### General Schools

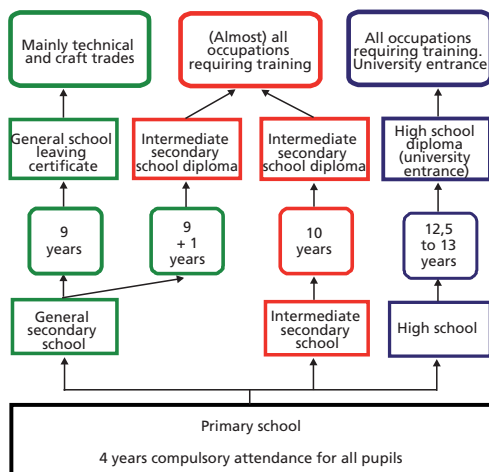
The federal political system has been an important factor in shaping the German educational system. The overwhelming majority of schools and higher education institutions are public institutions. Schools and educational institutions are a statutory element of state educational and cultural politics; with their traditionally strong focus on pedagogical and educational functions they naturally enjoy a higher standing than libraries. The cultural autonomy of the *Länder* grants them exclusive control over legislation governing education and teaching. Most schools are subsidized by local authorities or municipal associations; a growing number are maintained by the church or are privately run. Whilst the funding body is expected to pay the operating costs (building, furnishings and overheads), the *Länder* are responsible for funding the teaching staff.

The organization of the school system varies from state to state according to the political party currently in power. In order to ensure minimum national standards, the Standing Conference of the Cultural Ministers of the *Länder* (*Ständige Konferenz der Kultusminister der Länder – KMK*) acts as mediator: for instance, the KMK makes recommendations on the minimum number of years children must attend

school, on the elements of the curriculum, evaluation of school performance or the reciprocal recognition of examinations and grades. A similarly vital role is played by the Conference of Vice-Chancellors (*Hochschulrektorenkonferenz – HRK*) for institutions of higher education; this body is responsible for questions relating to research and teaching, academic training, knowledge and technology transfer, international co-operation and self-government.

According to the Federal Statistical Office there were 43,600 schools in Germany at the end of 2009 (34,700 general and 8,900 vocational training schools), with a total of around 492,000 classes, approximately 761,000 teachers and 11.7 million pupils. On average, 8.3% of these pupils were non-Germans, for the most part immigrants from Turkey, Italy, Serbia, Poland and Albania; the percentage of school children from migration backgrounds was around 24% in 2007. In 2009 around 727,000 children started primary school, 1.5 million young people (ca. 70% of school leavers) opted for vocational training, 0.7 million young people (as much as 31% of all school leavers) began a degree course at a university. Around 60,000 pupils or 0.5% of all pupils leave school each year without any kind of school-leaving certificate.

State schools are free in all the *Länder*. School attendance is compulsory for all children from the ages of 6 to 18. After attending elementary school (usually for four years), the pupils transfer to one of several kinds of secondary school: *Hauptschule* (middle school), *Realschule* (secondary school), *Regionale Schule* (regional school) and *Gymnasium* (grammar school). In only a few of the German *Länder* do “comprehensive schools” (*Gesamtschulen*) exist, combining the various types of secondary school. Pupils who begin a vocational training programme are required to attend a vocational training school (*Berufsschule*). Nearly all states now award the standard high school graduation and university entrance qualification, the *Abitur*, after 12 years’ (formerly 13) school attendance. Adequately equipped school libraries exist only in a small number of schools (around 18-20% in total with signs of a slight increase), mostly in *Gymnasien* and *Gesamtschulen*.



Three-track structure of the German school system

## Vocational Training

The Vocational Training Act (*Berufsbildungsgesetz*) is the statutory basis for vocational training in Germany. The most important element and main characteristic of basic vocational training in almost all areas is the so-called "dual system" (*Duales System*), based on the cooperative combination of two diametrically opposed parties – employers and public vocational training establishments. Whilst local authorities provide the funding for vocational training schools and the *Länder* are responsible for the teaching staff and instructional content, the Federal Government is charged with the task of drawing up the overall general requirements. The Chambers of Commerce (*Industrie- und Handelskammer*) and Chambers of Trade (*Handwerkskammer*) are responsible for ensuring that individual employers comply with state standards. The content of the training programmes is discussed and finalized by joint committees consisting of representatives of the employers' associations and the trade unions (for the employees).

Most young people begin their training or apprenticeship on leaving one of the secondary schools. Part of every training course consists in regular attendance at a vocational training school with instruction in practical and theoretical subjects related to the trade in question. The trainee signs a contract requiring the employer to grant him or her the necessary free time to attend vocational school. The training period usually lasts three years. At the end of this time,

the trainee must pass an examination set by an authorized independent institution, usually a Chamber of Commerce or Chamber of Trade. This qualification is recognized within the industrial and economic sector.

Currently there is only one area of librarianship with a vocational training programme based on the dual system. This is the successor to the former qualification of Library Assistant (*Assistent an Bibliotheken*), which was phased out in 1999. School-leavers from any of the secondary schools (*Hauptschule, Realschule and Gymnasium*) can embark on a three-year training programme to qualify as a Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellter für Medien- und Informationsdienste - FAMI*) in one of five different specialized areas (libraries, archives, general information and documentation centres, photo and film service units, medical documentation centres).

## The Public and Private Media Sector: Photo and Film Services, Media Centres, Commercial Providers

As audio-visual and digital media came to play an increasingly important role in education, the so-called Photo and Film Service Units (*Bildstellen*) and Media Centres (*Medienzentren*), which had been established in the 1930s, also took on a new functionality.

Today there are approximately 600 Media Centres funded by the towns and counties, as well as 15 State Media Centres (*Landesmedienzentren*) which exist primarily to provide media to schools and school libraries and to improve the media literacy of both pupils and teachers. These institutions are responsible for the purchase and provision of audio-visual and digital media together with their cataloguing and classification for teaching purposes; they furthermore advise on the use and purchase of audio-visual

For copyright reasons image is not available

As Regional Library for East Friesland, the County Library of Aurich (*Landschaftsbibliothek Aurich*) in Lower Saxony, founded in 1600, focuses on collecting literature about the region. The extension, built in 1995 and awarded several prizes, has added an open-access area to the closed-access stacks of the 1964 building.

media (videos, films, DVDs, Blu-ray discs, educational software, CD-ROMs) and modern AV hardware (video and DVD recorders, digital cameras, film projectors, PCs, mobile internet-enabled end-user devices, e-book readers) and provide information on media didactics and the impact of modern media. Working together on collaborative photographic and film projects helps children and young people learn skills and proficiencies also useful in daily life or when they later begin work. As partners of the schools, and increasingly also of school libraries and public libraries, the centres are important agents in the development of a critical and creative approach to modern media and internet content.

Taking both sectors of the media market – public and commercial – into account, Germany has one of the most densely-concentrated media landscapes in the world after Japan, Great Britain and Switzerland, with more than 130 television channels available and around 650 printed and online daily newspapers (including German-language editions of foreign newspapers). The number of financially autonomous companies in direct competition is considerably smaller however, since many newspapers are published in a variety of regional editions. The daily press has a circulation of around 21 million newspapers each day, while more than 38 million radio and 34 million television licences have been taken out. According to the latest figures for 2009 around 77% of German households own a personal computer with internet access, and this proportion is increasing.

Beside the press, the state-owned and commercial television companies, the cinema and music industry and the entertainment sector including electronic games continue to play an increasingly important social and economic role. The development of the entertainment and media industry will continue to be influenced by digitization of both content itself and its distribution channels. Whilst sales and rental of movies on DVD and Blu-ray disc, together with computer and console games, have stagnated at a high level, there has been a clear increase in the volume of paid digital audio, image and film data downloaded over the internet. The various media and entertainment sectors – books, films,

music, internet and games – have long been interlinked and now influence the daily life and leisure habits of the entire population. Public and academic libraries have responded to this trend and have for many years constantly been enlarging their holdings of digital media and improving their internet access facilities. However, they have only partly succeeded in keeping pace with the rapid advances both in the technology and range of media products available. The triumphant advance of the Web 2.0 and the social networking internet platforms such as Facebook, RSS-feeds, blogs, wikis etc. has continued inexorably, leading to radical changes in the communication and information options available to users almost constantly online.

### Professional Continuing Education and Further Education

Continuing professional education and further education in Germany has two main goals: first, to enable practitioners to update their existing professional qualifications to the latest technical and organizational standards, and secondly, to allow them to increase the breadth and depth of their professional knowledge. Most professional continuing education is subsidized by commercial enterprise. However, at federal, state and local level, the German state demonstrates its commitment to the continuing professional training of its own employees in the form of its academies, vocational training schools and extensive internal staff training programmes. In addition to the companies and vocational training colleges, there is a whole market of private continuing education providers, for example the technical academies (*Technische Akademien*), the training centres of the various economic sectors (*Bildungswerke der Wirtschaft*) or the professional continuing education centres of the trade unions (*Berufsbildungswerke der Gewerkschaften*). In librarianship alone there are more than 25 state- or privately-owned organizations nationwide offering a comprehensive range of continuing education activities.

## Adult Education and Community Colleges

Adult education (*Erwachsenenbildung*) is another important component of the general education system, complementing professional further education. Compared to school education, it is subject to very little state control or supervision. The most important adult education funding bodies are the adult education centres (*Volkshochschulen* – VHS), which have existed in Germany for about 85 years. Although the name *Volkshochschule* contains the German word for university, these centres are not part of the higher education sector but belong to the quaternary education domain (further education). There are today about 1,000 adult education centres, funded by local authorities, counties, churches, trade unions, private societies and charitable organizations. Each local adult education system operates independently, but state associations have been established in all the federal states to deal with mutual problems; they are represented at national level by the German Adult Education Association (*Deutscher Volkshochschulverband*). There are no limits to the course topics offered by the VHS centres, which are open to all: they offer long courses, one-off events, short courses, study excursions or external on-site training. A charge is usually made for the courses. As part of the universally-acclaimed process of *life-long learning*, numerous private and state-supported institutions also offer distance learning courses, with a significant increase in the proportion of internet-based courses over the last three to four years.

For copyright reasons image is not available

There is still considerable room for improvement in cooperation between municipal public libraries and adult education institutions. However a promising start has been made by a number of institutions; occasionally the director of the adult education centre is also head of the library, both institutions sometimes being accommodated under one roof. This physical integration facilitates the establishment of “self-learning centres” (*Selbstlernzentren*), which have been set up as pilot projects in several cities. Experts and politicians see a bright future in the development of viable new concepts promoting cooperation between the various educational institutions within the municipalities.

## Universities and other Higher Education Institutions

According to the Federal Statistical Office about 2.12 million students – including 11,9% non-Germans – currently attend the approximately 418 state-run or state-approved universities in Germany (figures from 31.12.2009). Experts reckon that by the year 2014 this number will have increased by half a million to just under 2.6 million, after which it will again decline. Among these institutions for research and teaching number – in addition to 105 universities – are around six teacher training colleges (*Pädagogische Hochschulen*), 16 theological seminaries (*Theologische Hochschulen*) and 15 fine arts and music conservatories (*Kunsthochschulen*), together with 203 Universities of Applied Sciences (*Fachhochschulen*), eight cooperative state universities (*Duale Hochschulen*) and 29 colleges of public administration (*Verwaltungsfachhochschulen*). They are for the most part state institutions funded by the *Länder*. Alongside the state-approved

The Ruhr University in Bochum (*Ruhr-Universität Bochum*) in the state of North Rhine-Westphalia, founded in 1962 and opened in 1965, is the first new university to be established in the Federal Republic after the Second World War. It is also a shining example of university building in the sixties, with its extensive use of exposed concrete and linear forms. The University Library is located centrally between the faculty buildings. Its over 1.6 m volumes are arranged almost entirely on open access with 900 work-spaces for the users.

universities affiliated to the Church, an increasing number of private foundations or companies have launched their own universities offering a specialized range of courses. University lecturers and other staff of the state-run institutions have the status of civil servants or public service employees. The principle of university autonomy (*Hochschulautonomie*) grants institutions of higher education the right to lay down their own internal rules, such as examination regulations. Until the federal reform legislation was passed on Sept 1<sup>st</sup> 2006, amending the Basic Law, the Federal Framework Act Governing Higher Education (*Hochschulrahmengesetz – HRG*) had been in force. Furthermore, research funding, higher education entrance, and repayable state grants for students (BAföG) are regulated by federal law. The Higher Education Building Financial Assistance Act (*Hochschulbauförderungsgesetzes – HBFoG*) requires the Federal Government to contribute 50% of the cost of higher education building and initial computer technology and academic literature provision.

The “Excellence” programme for the advancement of scholarship and research at German universities was initiated jointly by the Federal Government and the *Länder* with the dual aims of offering sustainable support to top-level research and strengthening Germany's position in the competitive international market. The programme is designed to support three areas: future strategy, graduate schools and clusters of excellence. It was deliberately designed as a competition. In the first round, held in 2006, three universities were singled out for their strategies for the future, which had been vetted by the German Research Foundation and the German Council of Science and Humanities; six further universities followed in the second round

in 2007 and were awarded funding amounting to several million Euros. These universities now regard themselves as “elite universities”.

The consecutive nationwide introduction of bachelor and master's degree courses initiated in 1999 by the Bologna Process will have been implemented at nearly all German universities by 2011. It is the declared aim of education policy to phase out previous qualifications such as the Diploma, Master's (*Magister*) and State Examination (*Staatsexamen*), but many institutions are opposed to these plans.

While universities and institutions of higher education in the United States receive around 1.1% of the gross domestic product in the form of public expenditure and the equivalent of a further 1.2% in the form of private donations, in Germany these figures are approximately 1% and 0.1% respectively. In Sweden and Finland total spending on universities is equivalent to about 1.7% of the gross domestic product. The majority of the German federal states have adopted the imposition of student tuition fees. This additional income is at the disposal of the universities and is intended to help safeguard teaching standards, including university libraries. However the fees are the subject of much

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Business and Economics Sectional Library (*Wirtschaftswissenschaftliche Zweigbibliothek*) of the University Library of Eichstätt in Ingolstadt (Bavaria), home to one of the 51 European Documentation Centres (EDZ) in Germany holding the publications of the European Union, was opened in 1989 in a renovated former seminary of the Steyler Missionaries. A reading room and a five-storey open-access shelving installation (book tower) are housed in the former church nave with choir and gallery.

political controversy, including current calls for their abolition.

University libraries exist first and foremost to serve the needs of staff and students as information centres but they are to an increasing extent opening their doors to the general public. Libraries of institutions of higher education are fairly closely integrated into the university structures by the legislation of the *Länder* and thus their existence is for the most part on a reasonably firm footing. On the other hand, current developments have called these basic principles into question, such as in those instances in which state higher education building legislation relegates university libraries to the status of a sub-department of the computer centre.

In Germany, the typology of higher education institutions is as follows:

- *Universities, Technical Universities and Comprehensive Universities (Gesamthochschulen)*: The entrance requirement for universities or equivalent institutions of higher education is the general or subject-specialized baccalaureate (*Hochschulreife*), which is usually attained after 12–13 years of schooling. A degree course will usually take 6 years to complete in practice, though the official duration for most subjects is four-and-a-half years. The new tuition

fees are designed to reduce the time spent at university. The universities with the largest numbers of students are Berlin (three separate universities with a total of 88,200 students), Munich (three universities with 71,000 students), Hagen Distance Teaching University (67,000), Cologne (45,000 students), Frankfurt am Main (37,500 students) and Münster (37,000 students).

- *Universities of Applied Sciences (Fachhochschulen)*: The degree courses at the 203 state-recognized *Fachhochschulen* in Germany differ from those of the universities in the greater emphasis placed on applied and practice-related aspects. The official course duration is between three and four years, and this is rarely exceeded in practice. On average, 25–28% of all students decide to study at a *Fachhochschule*.

- *Academies or Colleges of Art (Kunsthochschulen)*: A variety of higher education institutions exist for the fine arts, design, music, film and television. Entrance to these degree courses is subject to an appropriate aptitude test.

In some *Länder* other types of higher education institutions exist, such as the teacher training colleges (*Pädagogische Hochschulen – Lehrerausbildung*) of Baden Württemberg and the Cooperative State Universities (*Duale Hochschulen*) offering practice-related study courses, sometimes called Vocational Training Academies (*Berufsakademien*).

To summarize, two special features of the German education system stand out in international comparison. Firstly, the federal principle of cultural autonomy (*Kulturhoheit*) allows the

For copyright reasons image is not available

Weimar is a centre of extra-mural research. The study centre of the *Herzogin Duchess Anna Amalia Library* (Thuringia), opened in the winter of 2005, is part of the new Weimar library complex, consisting of several palaces and underground stacks. The book cube constructed in the inner courtyard of the Red Palace houses an open-access collection in classified order (capacity: 200,000 vols.) and forms the modern counterpart of the Rococo Hall in the main building (Green Palace). Following completion of the building work, the library offers ideal working conditions for scholars researching German literary history from the Enlightenment to the Romantic era.



*Länder* almost unlimited freedom to develop their own education systems (a freedom further enhanced by the Federalism Reform of 2006). Secondly, employers are required by law to shoulder the main burden of practical vocational training.

Education in Germany is characterized by a high degree of institutional flexibility with respect to the educational needs of the individual. Its goals are mobility, transparency and equal opportunity. It is thus quite common for former middle school graduates to go on to attain a university degree after having first gained other vocational qualifications. In the tertiary education sector two institutional types compete with one another, whereby the shorter, practice-related degrees offered by the *Fachhochschulen* or the training courses at the professional academies (*Berufsakademien*) have greater appeal to the professions than the more theoretical courses offered by the universities. The start of the Bologna process and the progressive "academization" of the *Fachhochschulen* has led to the increasing blurring of the distinction between the two systems.

The international PISA studies have highlighted some deficiencies in the German system. Pupils from the lower social strata with poor educational backgrounds or those from immigration backgrounds achieve significantly lower educational and vocational qualifications than in other countries. The efforts made by the federal states since publication of the PISA figures to improve the educational standards in schools have focused on improving reading standards. Many curricular and extra-curricular activities since then have aimed at fostering reading ability and interest in reading among children and young people of all social strata. In some federal states, special programmes have been initiated to empower public libraries, together with the state and church service centres, to develop creative reading projects in cooperation with nursery and primary schools. The Reading Foundation (*Stiftung Lesen*) in Mainz, founded in 1988, actively promotes reading motivation among children and young people. Under the patronage of the Federal President and with considerable support from the German Booksellers' and Publishers'

Association (*Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels*) and other partners and from sponsors from the media and cultural sector, the Foundation organizes promotional projects, school campaigns and booksellers' activities throughout the country. In 2004 the Academy for the Promotion of Reading (*Akademie für Leseförderung*) was established by the Reading Foundation at the Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz Library in Hanover to provide vocational and professional training for disseminators.



**Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels e.V.**

## The Book Trade

There is a history of close partnership between libraries and the book trade. In Germany, the book trade can look back on a tradition stretching back into the Middle Ages, a tradition not only of immense cultural importance but also of no mean economic significance. Since books are deemed to be objects of cultural value, they are subject to a reduced rate of value added tax (7%), as in many other countries. However this discount does not apply to e-books, which are subject to the full current value added tax rate of 19%. The book trade comprises the productive publishing sector, wholesale booksellers and retail bookshops. Mail-order online book sales have increased in importance in the wake of the spread of the internet. Amazon, the leading online booksellers in the German-speaking world, attained a turnover of a billion euros in 2009. The large bookseller chains such as Thalia (with around 300 outlets) or the Deutsche Buchhandels GmbH (with around 500 outlets) are squeezing the smaller owner-managed bookshops out of many towns in increasing numbers.

The generally good relationship between booksellers and libraries is not, however, altogether trouble-free. There are, for example, opposing views on a number of issues such as copyright law and licensing, which have led to legal wrangles. Exorbitant price increases, especially for electronic periodicals, have put an unreasonable strain on library budgets, leading to the forced cancellation of journal subscriptions.

Of the round 2,800 publishers registered for taxation purposes in 2008, together with the 4,860 booksellers and the over 80 intermediate distributors, a high percentage (5,790 companies) belong to the Association of the German Book Trade (*Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels e.V.*). This national association of book publishers and sellers was founded in Leipzig in 1825 and today has its headquarters in Frankfurt am Main. The International Frankfurt Book Fair (*Internationale Frankfurter Buchmesse*), the largest book fair in the world, has been staged there annually since 1949; around 7,300 publishing companies took part in the last fair, at which 290,000 visitors were registered. Every year the renowned Peace Prize of the German Book Trade (*Friedenspreis des Deutschen Buchhandels*) is awarded at the Book Fair. The traditional Spring Book Fair in Leipzig has been able to update its profile and so consolidate its position as leading international exhibition for the book trade and authors alike; in 2010 there were 2,070 exhibitors. The Association of the German Book Trade publishes a professional journal, the *Börsenblatt des Deutschen Buchhandels*, which not only carries advertising for new books, but also contains editorial contributions on the world of publishing. The Association's publishing house also publishes the *German Books in Print (Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher – VLB)*, an important source of information for booksellers and libraries on all 1.2 million titles currently in print, including pricing details.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The media concerns and publishing groups Springer, Klett, Cornelsen, Random House, Westermann, Haufe, Wolters Kluwe, MairDumont, Weltbild and Weka are the ten largest publishing houses in Germany, with a total annual turnover of 2.6 billion euros. In 2009 the total turnover of all the publishing houses and bookstores including books and specialist journals amounted to more than 15.2 billion euros.

As in many other countries, resale price maintenance applies to books in Germany, the only product for which this exception is made. The collective guarantee system for the sale of fixed-price publications, which in the past had been organized on the basis of private law and which was essentially voluntary, was replaced in October 2002 by a law requiring retailers to set and publish fixed prices. Deviations from the fixed price are only allowed in certain cases. One of these is the library discount agreement, which allows a 5% discount for all academic and research libraries open to the public, and 10% for public libraries, including school libraries.

Resale price maintenance for books guarantees a diversity of titles exceeding that of any other country of the world except Great Britain. Despite the rise of the new media, book production has continued to increase; in 2009 around 93,000 new titles were published, of which 81,800 were first editions. Among these new titles, fiction took first place with 17%, but children's and young people's literature is also well-represented (9%), followed by the other subject areas, such as literature, business, medicine, law, theology etc.; schoolbooks alone accounted for 6.9% of all first editions. The greatest number of new books are published in Munich, but Ber-

Libraries rely mainly on general bookstores to supply them with the latest titles on the German market. As a result of resale price maintenance on books, German boasts a close-knit and efficient nationwide network of bookshops. Alongside the larger stores, which have the requisite display area to present their stock to advantage, there exist a large number of medium-sized and small bookshops which pride themselves on local presence and customer service. The fixed retail price also ensures that a comprehensive pool of around 1.2 million titles are kept in print. Titles not in stock can often be supplied within one working day.

lin, Frankfurt am Main, Stuttgart, Cologne, and Hamburg are also important publishing centres. These cities also have the highest number of bookstores.

The number of translations may be considered an important indicator in determining the cultural flexibility of a country. About 10,600 titles, or around 12.7% of all books published in Germany in 2009, have been translated into German from other languages. Among the original languages English dominates (65%), with French (10.2%) and Japanese (5.2%) following a long way behind. A particularly large number of fiction titles are translations but a considerable number of books for children and young people, together with comics, are also translated. That the East is opening up to world trade can be seen by the demand for translation licences for German titles; in 2009 there were more translations into Polish, Chinese, Czech, Korean and Spanish than into English.

In many cases the Goethe Institute is willing to fund translation into other languages; this is of especial significance for titles with little chance of commercial success.

The institution ISBN forms a link between the book trade and libraries; the international agency is located at the State Library in Berlin. The International Standard Book Number, or ISBN for short, is a coded combination of numbers used as a unique identifier for each non-periodical title published by the book trade. Since 2007 this function has been fulfilled by the 13 digit number used mostly in the book trade's inventory management systems but also employed by most libraries for ordering and computer-based cataloguing. The ISBN13 is part of the international Global Trade Item Number (GTIN) classification, formerly the European Article Number (EAN), introduced in 2009. The prefix "978" or "979" indicates publishing products.

### 3 LIBRARY DIVERSITY

#### The Multifaceted Picture of Libraries in Germany

#### The Many Different Types of Funding Institutions

The sheer diversity of German libraries has left its special mark on the librarianship of this country. Not infrequently, particular types of library have their roots in a specific historical era and are thus closely bound up with the cultural and intellectual development of Germany and its territories. They can usually be assigned to one particular kind of funding institution. It would therefore be a good idea to take a look at the range of these institutions and to start by naming the three most important ones: the *public*, the *church* and the *private* funding institutions.

#### Public Funding Institutions

##### *The Federal Government*

The German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*), for which the Federal Commissioner for Culture and Media (*Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien* – BKM) is responsible, is foremost among the libraries funded by the Federal Government. Other notable libraries are the Library of the German Parliament (*Bibliothek des Deutschen Bundestages*), with 1.4 million volumes one of the largest parliamentary libraries in the world, the libraries of the Federal Ministries and administrative authorities, the libraries of the Federal Courts and of the Federal research institutions, as well as the two Universities of the German Armed Forces in Hamburg and Neubiberg (near Munich).

Since responsibility for science, education, culture and art is almost exclusively the preserve of the *Länder*, the Federal Government acts as library funding agency in only a few isolated cases.

For instance, the Federal Government contributes to the funding of individual libraries and institutions of national importance. The more than 80 non-university research institutions

united in the Scientific Association Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (*Wissenschaftsgemeinschaft Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz e.V.*) are jointly funded by the Federal Government and the *Länder* and have their own subject-based special libraries. Other institutions of the scientific and research infrastructure, which as a result are also members of the Leibniz Society, include the Central Subject Libraries for Medicine, Technology, and Business and Economics. A funding mix – Federal Government, private foundations and the individual *Länder* – is evidenced in the large research institutions such as the Max Planck Society (*Max-Planck-Gesellschaft*), the Fraunhofer Society (*Fraunhofer-Gesellschaft*) or the Hermann von Helmholtz Association of German Research Centres (*Helmholtz-Gemeinschaft Deutscher Forschungszentren*), which also maintain important special libraries.

##### *The Federal States (Länder)*

Because of the guaranteed principle of cultural and educational autonomy (*Kulturhoheit*) of the federal states regarding decision-making in all scientific, educational and social issues, the *Länder* are the leading German funding bodies in the academic and research library sector. This means that the federal states are responsible not only for almost all institutions of higher education including university libraries but also for the libraries of the state parliaments, the state authorities and state research institutions, the state archives and the museums.

##### *The Municipalities*

The most important funding agencies for public libraries are the cities and the local authorities which may, and indeed do, make use of their legal right to local self-government in order to maintain city or community libraries. In some federal states the counties also maintain their own mobile, central county or supplementary county libraries, or cooperate with local municipalities and the state in the joint funding of a central library. In some cases they provide funding to the local municipalities for the upkeep of their town and community libraries.

### Public Foundations

Public foundations are often responsible for the funding of notable libraries. Foremost among these are the Foundation of the Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Stiftung Preußischer Kulturbesitz*), with the Berlin State Library (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin*) and the Classic Foundation of Weimar (*Klassik Stiftung Weimar*) with the Duchess Anna Amalia Library (*Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek*) in Weimar. Further such public law foundations maintaining their own libraries, and therefore dependent on the financial subsidies of the regional authorities, are the Francke Foundations (*Franckeschen Stiftungen*) with their Main Library in Halle on the Saale River, the Foundation of the Germanic National Museum (*Stiftung Germanisches Nationalmuseum*) in Nuremberg with its outstanding special library, and the Foundation of the Central and State Library Berlin (*Stiftung Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin*), under whose auspices the Berlin City Library (*Stadtbibliothek*), the American Memorial Library (*Amerika-Gedenk-Bibliothek – AGB*) the Senate Library (*Senatsbibliothek*) and the German Central Library of Economics (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften, Leibniz-Informationszentrum Wirtschaft – ZBW*) are united.

form an integral part of the academic and research library system. Most of these libraries are members of the Working Group of Catholic and Theological Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft katholisch-theologischer Bibliotheken – AkthB*) and the Association of Ecclesiastical Academic Libraries. The diocesan libraries provide a regional literature service to their respective diocese; not only do they serve the full and part-time church staff, scholars, trainees and students, they are also open to the public. The libraries of the monastic orders and monasteries have developed in different directions according to the history, aims and profile of the order, ranging from large theological and philosophical libraries such as in the Benedictine abbeys at Maria Laach and Beuron to smaller special libraries holding mainly publications relating to the order, and other libraries meeting daily theological needs. Holdings encompass not only current theological and philosophical literature and material pertaining to related disciplines but also varied collections of manuscripts, incunabula and rare printed books. The churches maintain small *public libraries*, mostly run by volunteers, at parish and local congregational level. In many rural areas without a local library, the church library may be the sole provider of general literature.

### Ecclesiastical Funding Institutions

Both the Catholic and the Protestant Churches own a large number of libraries. The cathedral, diocesan, and state church libraries belong to the species scholarly *special libraries*, along with the libraries of the seminaries and other religious institutions and associations. In addition, the libraries of non-secular institutions of higher education such as that of the Catholic University of Eichstätt (*Katholische Universität Eichstätt*)

In 1987 the Main Library of the Catholic University of Eichstätt (*Zentralbibliothek der Katholischen Universität Eichstätt*) in Bavaria moved into a new award-winning building (architect: Günther Behnisch) situated in the Altmühl meadows. The transparent construction uses form and colour to combine design and atmosphere to the highest standard. Facilities for users include carrels for concentrated work, overlooking the river.

For copyright reasons image is not available

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Court Library of the Prince of Thurn and Taxis (*Fürst Thurn und Taxis Hofbibliothek*) is classed as a private library and is a scholarly general library with 216,000 volumes, 3,350 manuscripts and 1,300 incunabula and early imprints which were made available to the public as early as 1782. The baroque domed hall, built in 1732 and named after its artist Cosmas Damian Asam, houses the Library's older collections.

## The Many Different Types of Library

The individual types of libraries can be classified not only by their funding institutions – public or private – but also by many other factors, such as historical development, collection size and structure, or the kind of user they serve. Another important criterion is the range of their objectives and functions. In reality, there is a good deal of overlapping, especially in libraries which have by definition a dual function, such as combined city and state libraries (*Stadt- und Landesbibliothek*). For the purposes of the following typology, we will therefore focus on each library's primary function.

### Private Funding Institutions

Private institutions providing funding for libraries include companies, societies, and private persons. Many large businesses maintain their own libraries and information centres for purposes of research and development, focusing specifically on the literature needs of the company staff. These libraries are generally not open to the public. Also belonging to the category of scientific special libraries are the libraries created by associations with economic, professional, scientific or idealistic objectives to support their work. Private persons as the owners of larger libraries open to the public have become much rarer in Germany than in the past. Only in exceptional instances have private collections remained in the hands of the nobility (Regensburg, Sigmaringen). The largest metropolitan library system in Germany is reckoned to be the Book Halls in the city state of Hamburg, which are funded by a civil-law foundation.

### Libraries at National Level

Alongside the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) there are a number of other outstanding large libraries with a crucial role in the library system at national level.

#### The German National Library (Deutsche Nationalbibliothek)

Unlike many other countries, Germany had no national library for a long period of time due to territorial fragmentation and internal political polarities. The *Deutsche Bücherei*, founded by the Association of the German Book Trade with the financial support of the city of Leipzig and the Kingdom of Saxony in 1912, was no longer able to fulfil the function of national library and national bibliographical centre for the Allied zones after the division of Germany in 1945. On the initiative of publishers and librarians *Die Deutsche Bibliothek* was therefore established in Frankfurt am Main in 1946. Both institutions were merged following reunification in 1990 and

Name of Library	Holdings	Circulation (in ME)	Spending on acquisitions and binding (Euro)	Active users	Hours open per week	Inter-library loans and document delivery
Berlin SBB	10.79 m	1.75 m	9.31 m	49,761	70	73,200
Frankfurt am Main/ Leipzig/ Berlin DNB	17.08 m	0.78 m	n/a	30,977	79	9,835
Hanover TIB	2.77 m	n/a	11.63 m	24,326	80	268,000
Kiel and Hamburg (ZBW)	4.23 m	0.39 m	3.17 m	16,215	55	84,400
Cologne ZBMed	1.50 m	n/a	5.50 m	n/a	68	275,000
Munich BSB	9.53 m	1.65 m	19.32 m	55,123	112	393,250

Source: Germany Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik*), updated to 31.12.2009

renamed *Die Deutsche Bibliothek* (DDB). In 2006 a law was passed changing the name to the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek – DNB*). The DNB fulfils its comprehensive functions from locations in Frankfurt am Main and Leipzig, the latter also being the home of the German Music Archive (*Deutsches Musikarchiv – DMA*), which was founded in 1970 in Berlin as a department of the Deutsche Bibliothek, as it was then called, moving to Leipzig at the end of 2010.

With approximately 26 million media units, the German National Library is by far the largest library in Germany, while the German Music Archive, housing 850,000 sets of sheet music and over 1.5 million sound recordings, is the largest German music library. Among its objectives as defined by the "German National Library Act" (*Gesetz über die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*), which came into force on June 29<sup>th</sup> 2006, are the acquisition, processing, bibliographical indexing, long-term archiving and making available to the public of:

- works published in Germany after 1913 and
- German-language works published in other countries after 1913 including translations of German-language works into other languages and foreign-language works about Germany.

In addition the Library is required to take responsibility for the provision of central library services and a national bibliography. The term "works" includes all print, image or sound publications, whether these are made available to the public in physical or non-physical form.

Legal deposit legislation states that a copy of every work produced by commercial or non-commercial publishers in Germany shall be sent to the German National Library free of charge and without further demand. The Collection Guidelines explain and further define the legal details of the statutory collection mandate.

This unequivocal mandate confers upon the German National Library the function of general library for works published in the German-speaking world from 1913 onwards, i.e. it is

The new building of the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) in Frankfurt am Main in Hesse (architects: Arat, Kaiser, Kaiser) took only six years to build and was inaugurated in 1997. It has a usable area of 77,000 m<sup>2</sup> and provides space to house 18 million publications, which means that the capacity will not be exhausted until 2035, if the expected daily intake of 1,000 titles is maintained. A 3,200 m<sup>2</sup> reading room with 350 workspaces and a reference library of 100,000 volumes are available to library users.

For copyright reasons image is not available

responsible for collecting and cataloguing materials from all subject areas. In its function as national archive, the German National Library does not lend these holdings, but they are available for reference consultation.

The German National Library is not only the central German archive library and the central music archive, but also the national bibliographic centre. In fulfilment of this duty it compiles and publishes the German National Bibliography (*Deutsche Nationalbibliografie*). The individual subsections of the German National Bibliography have been published regularly online in PDF format since 2010 and are integrated into the free search functions in the catalogue of the German National Library. Alongside this freely available online database there is also a national bibliographical service serving the needs of customers who in addition to the use of the database also require the enhanced selection facilities offered by regular new record updates or who still need continued access to certain traditional formats.

Data from the German National Bibliography are marketed through various channels, including printed catalogue cards, the online database or data transfer via FTP or internet server, and are available in MAB, MARC 21 and OAI-DC formats. The print edition of the German National Bibliography ceased publication at the end of 2009 after nearly one hundred years. In cooperation with the Book Trade Marketing and Publisher Service (*Marketing- und Verlagsservice des Buchhandels GmbH – MVB*), operated by the German Publishers and Booksellers Association

(*Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels*), which is in turn responsible for the production of German Books in Print (*Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher – VLB*) on DVD and online, the German National Library has published its new title information service *Neuerscheinungsdienst* since 2003.

The German National Library devotes special attention to the publications of German-language authors in emigration and exile during the years of the National Socialist regime from 1933–1945. The Collection of Exile Literature (*Sammlung Exil-Literatur*) of the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig and the German Exile Archive (*Deutsches Exilarchiv*) of the German National Library in Frankfurt am Main contain published books, brochures, and journals of German emigrants abroad, as well as the personal records of individual emigrants and the archives of exile organizations.

*Die Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig houses an international research library of documentation on the Holocaust. The *Anne Frank Shoah Library* (Leipzig) is committed to making available all literature published worldwide on the persecution and destruction of European Jews by the National Socialist movement in Germany. Publications on other peoples and minorities persecuted for racial, political, religious or other reasons also fall into this category.

The German Book and Writing Museum (*Das Deutsche Buch- und Schriftmuseum*) in the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig is a documentation centre for the history and culture of the book. At a time when audio-visual and electronic media are increasingly competing with the book, it is becoming more important than ever to preserve valuable examples of the culture of the printed

The German Music Archiv (*Deutsches Musikarchiv – DMA*) was founded in 1970 and is part of the German National Library. It is not only the central repository for printed music and recordings but also the German information centre for the bibliography of music. In 2010 the DMA left the Herrenhaus Correns ("Siemens Villa") in Berlin-Lankwitz, which had been its home since 1978, to join the DNB at its location in Leipzig. Its current holdings number around 1 million media, housed in the extension building completed in 2011 and including a new reading room and sound studio.

For copyright reasons image is not available



word. Founded in 1884, making it the oldest book museum in the world, the Museum makes its extensive and valuable holdings, including the largest collection of watermarked papers in the world, available to a wide audience via both its permanent and special exhibitions.

The German National Library cooperates with national and international library institutions to participate in numerous projects. Examples of these are: the compilation of common rules, standards and norms, the cooperative maintenance of authority file databases, the development of strategies and techniques for mass deacidification, the definition of a metadata standard for indexing digital and digitized resources, the administration of the national ISSN centre for Germany, and the establishment of the German Digital Library and the Europeana collection.

The Centre for Book Conservation (*Zentrum für Bucherhaltung*) in Leipzig was part of the *Deutsche Bücherei* until 1998 and has since then taken on the status of an independent corporation concerned with the conservation and restoration of books as physical objects. Tens of thousands of books published from the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century onwards are threatened by acid deterioration because the paper from which they were made was based on wood pulp instead of textiles (rags). Automatic and manual treatment methods are used to strengthen the endangered pages using the so-called *paper-splitting* technique, helping to preserve them through deacidification. Microfilming is also used as a means of preserving the texts of endangered books.

The fact that the German National Library's mandate is limited to the collection and administration of exclusively German-language literature distinguishes it from the national libraries of many other countries, these being also charged with the acquisition of the most important foreign or foreign-language publications on their countries and thereby often developing into large general libraries with considerable collections of national and foreign literature. This secondary function of a national library is primarily fulfilled in Germany by two leading general libraries: the Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*), founded in

1661, and the Bavarian State Library (*Bayerische Staatsbibliothek*) in Munich, founded in 1558. Both have evolved from the former court libraries of princes, and both fulfil national functions on the grounds of their excellent collections and the wide-ranging services they offer. With their comprehensive holdings of older German and international material, their numerous special collections, and their participation in the Special Subject Field Collection Programme of the DFG and Collection of German Imprints (*Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*), they can be designated as central or national general libraries. In the field of the applied sciences, they are augmented by the three Central Subject Libraries; in the field of German national literature published up to 1913 they are aided by the other member libraries of the Consortium for the Collection of German Imprints (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*).

### The Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*)

The State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz* – SBB-PK) ranks alongside the Bavarian State Library as the most important academic research and information library in Germany. It forms part of the Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation (*Stiftung Preußischer Kulturbesitz*), responsible for the preservation, curation and further collection of the cultural heritage of the former Prussian territory and one of the largest cultural institutions in the world. 75% of its funding is provided by the Federal Government, the rest coming from the German federal states. The library continues the tradition of the former Royal Library of Berlin (*Königliche Bibliothek*), founded in 1661, which was later to become the Prussian State Library (*Preußische Staatsbibliothek*) and which had been one of the largest and most outstanding general academic libraries in Europe before the Second World War.

In the aftermath of the war, post-war Germany found itself with two State Libraries, both located in Berlin. Following German reunification the two locations in the East and West of

For copyright reasons image is not available

In 1978, 33 years after the end of the Second World War, the State Library Prussian Cultural Heritage was finally able to unite its collections and move into a new building on Potsdamer Platz in Berlin-Tiergarten (architect: Hans Scharoun). The Potsdamer Platz building of the State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*) functions as a lending and study library combined with an information centre; it houses the special regional collections relating to Eastern Europe, the Middle and the Far East.

the city were merged in 1992 to form the State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*), a “library with two homes” under the auspices of the public Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation.

For each of the two locations a subject focus concept was developed which took into account the existing holdings and which has recently been reviewed. For many years the Unter den Linden building has been undergoing a complete renovation programme, including the addition of a central reading room which opened its doors as early as 1912; this location functions as a historical research library, dedicated to the collection of literature from all periods up to the turn of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. In addition to the historical printed works, the special materials collections of manuscripts, music, maps and books for children and young people are also centred here. The location also houses a modern restoration workshop and a digitization centre. The building at Potsdamer Street is being remodelled as a contemporary literature research library and will contain modern and current literature alongside a general reference collection covering all periods. It is furthermore home to the special regional collections relating to Eastern Europe, the Middle and the Far East.

The State Library of Berlin’s holdings encompass over 10.8 million books, periodicals and serial works, over 200,000 rare books and 4,400 early printed works, 1.8 million specialist printed works in the special collections, 1,475

literary estates and archives, just under 60,000 manuscripts, over 320,000 autograph texts and around 2.7 million microforms. Subscriptions are held to 360 newspapers from all over the world and just under 27,000 international printed periodicals. Electronic resources include 2,836 databases and 5,380 electronic journals.

Within the national system of literature and information provision, the State Library has a variety of functions. Under the programme for national literature provision financed by the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft – DFG*), it is responsible for several special subject areas, including law and jurisprudence, East and Southeast Asia, Slavic languages and literature, foreign-language newspapers and parliamentary publications. Under the co-operative acquisitions programme Collection of German Imprints (*Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*), the State Library is responsible for acquiring all printed works published between 1871–1912 (maps between 1801–1912, sheet music between 1801–1945). The affiliated Picture Archive (*Bildagentur für Kunst, Kultur und Geschichte*) administers the photographic collections and the estates of numerous photographers and holds over 12 million pictures.

The Library partially continues in the tradition of the former Prussian National Library in its provision of bibliographical services. It houses the editorial board of the national Periodicals Database (*Zeitschriftendatenbank*), listing 1.5 million newspapers and periodicals and including details of more than 9.4 million locations for

these titles in around 4,300 German libraries. In the area of manuscripts and early printed books the State Library is responsible for the national autograph and literary legacy database Kalliope as well as for the Union Catalogue of Incunabula (*Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke*), which has been available in printed (and now electronic) form for over 100 years and lists books printed before 1500. Finally, it is also worth mentioning that the Berlin State Library is in charge of the international ISBN Agency and the international ISMN agency, both of which administer the worldwide distribution of the standard book and music numbering systems.

### The Bavarian State Library in Munich (Bayerische Staatsbibliothek)

With around 10 million volumes of national and international literature, the Bavarian State Library (*Bayerische Staatsbibliothek – BSB*) in Munich is the second largest scholarly general library in the Federal Republic of Germany and owns one of the most significant collections of primary sources in the world. At the same time, it is the regional state library (*Landesbibliothek*) of the Free State of Bavaria and the state service centre for public libraries in all aspects of Bavarian librarianship; since 1663 it has collected the legal deposit copies of all works published in Bavaria. Its more than 55,000 journals and newspaper subscriptions make it the largest periodicals library in Europe after the British Library.

Founded in 1558 as the ducal court library of the House of Wittelsbach, the library adopted its present name, the Bavarian State Library, in 1919. It collects publications of all countries and subject areas. Special areas of focus include Bavarica, antiquity and the classics, history, music, Eastern and South-eastern Europe, and the

Orient and Far East. Its tradition and history lead it to place special emphasis on the collection of manuscripts and imprints published before 1700, together with literature of the post-World War II era in non-German languages.

With 93,000 manuscripts, the manuscript collection is the largest in the world. Equally outstanding is the collection of early imprints numbering 19,900 volumes. Since the Bavarian State Library is foremost in the collection of 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> century German-language imprints, it has also taken on a leading role in the corresponding national bibliographic cataloguing projects and in the production of the Collection of German Imprints (*Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*) for the period from 1450 to 1600, sheet music imprints up to 1800. Within the Special Subject Fields programme of the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*), the Bavarian State Library has adopted responsibility for collection-building in several special subject areas. Its heavy involvement in international acquisitions is clearly manifested in the fact that four-fifths of its book purchases are made outside Germany.

In similar manner to the Berlin State Library, the Bavarian State Library in Munich also participates in numerous national and international cooperative projects, maintaining partnerships with international associations and foreign libraries. Based on the attitude that the heritage of the past is closely linked to the printed book, but that although the book will continue to play

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Bavarian State Library (*Bayerische Staatsbibliothek – BSB*) in Munich was first granted a building of its own in 1843, planned by Friedrich von Gärtner. It was considered the best German library building of its time, combining functional and representational aspects, the latter in the form of its monumental interior staircase. Limited stack area has forced the BSB, along with many other German libraries, to house a large proportion of its holdings offsite.

a leading role in the future, the new electronic media will open up totally new vistas, the Library has directed its efforts both towards the preservation of its older collections and the promotion of modern technology. The Bavarian State Library thus houses both the Institute for Book and Manuscript Restoration (*Institut für Buch- und Handschriftenrestaurierung*) and the Munich Digitization Centre (*Münchener Digitalisierungszentrum – MDZ*).

### The Central Subject Libraries

The three *Central Subject Libraries (Zentrale Fachbibliotheken)* in Hanover, Cologne and Kiel are responsible for national literature provision in the applied sciences. Their objective is to ensure that the collections in their respective subject areas are as broadly based and comprehensive as possible, thus enabling them to supplement the German National Library and the two state general libraries in Berlin and Munich in fulfilling their national mandate. These exhaustive acquisitions profiles include the collection of grey literature and non-book media of all kinds, which is processed and made available for interlibrary loan and document delivery. For this reason they receive joint funding from the Federal Government and the *Länder*.

The Technical Information Library (*Technische Informationsbibliothek – TIB*) in Hanover, founded in 1959, is the central German subject library for technology, architecture, chemistry, computer science, mathematics and physics. It forms part of the national research infrastructure and is at

the same time not only the largest special library worldwide in its own subject areas but also among the top performing document delivery agencies. It is also the job of the TIB to provide national and international research and industry with literature and information. It defines its primary task as the provision of its customized full-text delivery service GetInfo, the subject portal for science and technology. This depends on the comprehensive acquisition and archiving of both conventional and so-called grey technical and scientific literature from all over the world. The Library masters its many commitments with the help of its 24,600 current specialist journal subscriptions and 6 million books, microforms etc., including conference proceedings, research reports, patents, norms, standards and theses. It is actively involved in around 30 projects and co-operative activities at both national and international level (e.g. DataCite), focusing especially on the areas visual search, data visualization, future internet and the semantic web.

The German National Library of Medicine (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Medizin – ZB MED*), founded in 1969 and located in Cologne and Bonn, is the national subject specialist library for medicine, health, nutrition, the environmental and agricultural sciences, including the corresponding theoretical sciences and peripheral disciplines. With over 1.5 million volumes and 7,300 current periodicals together with a further 7,000 titles online, the ZB MED is the largest library of its kind in Europe and the second largest medical library in the world. Besides the online catalogue and current contents database of German medical journal literature (CCMED), the library maintains the Virtual Medical Library MEDPILOT (*Virtuelle Fachbibliothek Medizin*) in cooperation with the German Institute of Medical Documentation and Information

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *German National Library of Medicine* in Cologne (North Rhine-Westphalia) with predecessors going back to the year 1908, is the largest medical special library in Europe. Its holdings were formerly scattered over several floors of a clinic building but in 1999 it moved into its own new purpose-built premises in the centre of the Cologne University Clinic. The ZB MED Departmental Library for Nutrition, Environment and Agriculture is located in Bonn.

(*Deutsches Institut für Medizinische Dokumentation und Information – DIMDI*), also located in Cologne. MEDPILOT enables parallel searching in more than 40 literature and factual databases together with other catalogues and indexes offering online access to the original documents (if licensed, otherwise via pay-per-view). The Virtual Subject Library for Nutrition, Environment and Agriculture (*Virtuelle Fachbibliothek für Ernährung, Umwelt und Agrar – GREENPILOT*) provides full-text access and a document delivery component. The ZB MED's function is to help its customers create new documents and it is therefore pledged to the principles of Open Access. It is responsible for the implementation of innovative projects in areas such as semantic indexing and is the provider of the open-access portal "German Medical Science", an online platform for scientific journals, conference proceedings and research reports.

The German National Library of Economics – Leibniz Information Centre for Economics – ZBW (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften – Leibniz Informationszentrum Wirtschaft – ZBW*), divided between its two locations in Hamburg and Kiel, is the largest special economics library in the world, counting over four million media at the beginning of 2007, including comprehensive holdings of working papers, statistics, dissertations and conference proceedings. It subscribes to 32,000 printed and electronic journals. The Library's acquisitions profile includes the disciplines management, economics and business practice. The online catalogue ECONIS, which contains 5.2 million titles, is compiled from the library's acquisitions and also contains articles from books and journals. The Library makes its holdings available worldwide through the national and international interlibrary loans networks and the direct document delivery service subito. Other ZBW resources include the Virtual Subject Library EconBiz and the online information service EconDesk.

## State Libraries (*Landesbibliotheken*) and other Regional Libraries

The approximately 40 State (*Landesbibliotheken*) and other regional libraries are responsible for literature services for a particular region rather than for a particular educational or other institution. Such a region might possibly be as large as a whole federal state, or part of one; it might also be a regional area or a city with its hinterland. There are considerable differences between the regional libraries in terms of history, size, collection structure, funding bodies and, above all, name, which creates the impression that they are a very heterogeneous group. But since they all fulfil the same basic functions, it is worth considering them as belonging to the same category. Libraries with a purely federal state or regional function are usually, though not always, called State Library (*Landesbibliothek* or *Staatliche Bibliothek*).

Apart from special cases, the regional libraries have a clear mandate to provide literature covering all fields, even if many libraries traditionally focus on the humanities and social sciences. This enables them to provide users in their area – be it a city, a region or an entire Federal State – with scholarly and other literature. Their chief mission,

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Regional Library of Oldenburg (*Landesbibliothek Oldenburg*) in Lower Saxony, a scholarly general library with regional emphasis, was founded in 1792. In 1987 it moved into its present premises in a renovated and re-designed infantry barracks. Its holdings of 785,000 media are also used by members of the University of Oldenburg, opened in 1974.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz Library – Regional Library of Lower Saxony in Hanover (*Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek*) houses Leibniz' considerable collection of personal papers and is a centre for research on the distinguished polymath. In his estate is the calculation Leibniz constructed in 1695 for all four basic arithmetical operations. The essential principles remained unchanged into the 20<sup>th</sup> century. In 2007 Unesco incorporated the 15,000 documents in the collection of Leibniz' correspondence into the World Heritage Program "Memory of the World".

For copyright reasons image is not available

The State and City Library of Augsburg (*Staats- und Stadtbibliothek Augsburg*), founded in 1537, can be classed as a scholarly city library. It functions as an archive and regional library and is responsible for processing the legal deposit copies for the Swabian administrative area. The neo-baroque building, inaugurated in 1893, was considered an outstanding example of library architecture because of its multi-tiered stack shelving.

however, is to collect, archive, catalogue and index printed literature about the region itself and make it generally available. Whilst the German National Library has been granted the right of legal deposit for the whole country, libraries with regional function have similar rights for their own region or federal state. The German National Library and the regional libraries in the individual states are currently working on legislation to govern the collection and archiving of websites and network publications.

The law of legal deposit, which most regional libraries implement, is the basis for the compilation and regular publication of regional bibliographies containing all new publications about one particular federal state, including its various regions and communities and persons connected with them. Previously this took the form of a printed bibliography, but searchable databases have since replaced the printed editions. Regional bibliographies (*Landesbibliographien*) now cover the whole of the Federal Republic.

Typical additional activities of the regional libraries are the cataloguing and care of historical and older holdings, the collection and processing of personal estates and archives of prominent local citizens, the maintenance of literary archives, and intensive cultural and public relations programmes with exhibitions, lectures, readings, concerts, etc. In this they often receive financial assistance from library societies and Friends of the Library groups, which are able to step into the breach when the library budget is low or when unbureaucratic help is at a premium

Most state libraries (*Landesbibliotheken*) have evolved from court libraries; some of them owe their existence to an earlier role as deposit libraries for the items removed from the monasteries during the dissolution (Amberg, Bamberg, Passau, Regensburg); others have collections with close historical links to the libraries of the *Gymnasien* (Coburg, Gotha). A few were founded as late as the 20<sup>th</sup> century by the Federal Government or by some other regional governing authority (Aurich, Koblenz, Speyer). The dwindling numbers of Academic City Libraries (*Wissenschaftliche Stadtbibliotheken*) evolved from City Council Libraries (*Ratsbüchereien*) or historical city libraries (Lübeck, Nuremberg, Ulm),

though some were not established until the 20<sup>th</sup> century (ZLB Berlin, Dortmund) and others can be traced back to the dissolution of a university library (Mainz, Trier). Examples of the integration of city and state libraries can be found in Potsdam and Berlin.

For historical and geographical reasons, several federal states in Germany have more than one older Regional or State Library, others none at all. In such cases, the university libraries perform the appropriate regional duties in addition to their original functions and this double mandate is reflected in the library's name. Thus we find combinations such as "University and State Library" (*Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek*) (Bonn, Darmstadt, Düsseldorf, Halle, Jena, Münster, Saarbrücken), "State and University Library" (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek*) (Bremen, Hamburg) or "University and Regional Library" (*Hochschul- und Landesbibliothek*) (Fulda, Wiesbaden). In Rhineland-Palatinate both regional libraries in Koblenz and Speyer were merged in 2004 with the Bibliotheca Bipontina in Zweibrücken and the Public Library Agencies in Neustadt/Weinstrasse and Koblenz to form a multifunctional "Regional Library Centre".

In many places, regional libraries are also involved in the provision of literature services for study, research, and teaching purposes. They are fully integrated into the regional and national structure of the academic and research library system, make their scholarly literature available through the interlibrary loan network, and hold particular interest for researchers because of their collections of older and specialized material. Especially in the cities with recently founded universities (Augsburg, Bamberg, Trier) or other newer institutions of higher education (Zwickau), or in cities where universities evolved from tech-

nical colleges (Hanover, Karlsruhe, Stuttgart), the regional libraries supplement the literature provision services of the universities in certain subject areas.

Several of the former court libraries with valuable historical book collections have concentrated on selected fields of the humanities and cultural history and today consider themselves to be *research libraries* (*Forschungsbibliotheken*) with their own acquisitions profile. This research affinity manifests itself in the independent scholarly activities of these libraries and their support of research projects such as the preparation of critical editions, the awarding of scholarships and the organization and hosting of international conferences. The *Duke August Library* (*Herzog August Bibliothek*) in Wolfenbüttel, specializing in European cultural history of early modern times, is a member of this small but important group, as is also the *Duchess Anna Amalia Library* (*Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek*) in Weimar, dedicated especially to the collection of German classical literature. Both libraries have excellent older collections, available to researchers for reference and for the most part on open access, arranged by subject and complemented by the appropriate current secondary literature.

The *Research Library of Gotha* (*Forschungsbibliothek Gotha*), which is organizationally part of the University Library of Erfurt, has comprehensive collections of older material, originally including all subject fields, but since 1850 dominated by the humanities. The Main Library

**The Library of the Francke Foundations** (*Bibliothek der Franckeschen Stiftungen*) in Halle (Saxony-Anhalt), established in 1698 in connection with the founding of an orphanage, has been housed in its own building since 1728. The shelves holding the book collections are arranged in the room to resemble theatre backdrops. After completion of restoration work in 1998, the baroque "scenery library" (*"Kulissenbibliothek"*) was once more able to radiate its original 18<sup>th</sup> century splendour.

For copyright reasons image is not available

of the Francke Foundations (*Hauptbibliothek der Franckeschen Stiftungen*) in Halle did not originate as a regional library, but was established for educational purposes in 1698. It is a research library specializing in ecclesiastical history and the history of education in the early modern period, and concentrates on acquisitions in these fields.

## Libraries of Higher Education Institutions

In the Federal Republic of Germany, the funding of higher education is usually the responsibility of the Federal States (*Bundesländer*). The three-tiered structure of the various institutions of higher education detailed above also determines the library structure of these institutions, namely the following: traditional university libraries, the libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences and the libraries of the music and fine arts conservatories. In Baden Württemberg there are also the libraries of the colleges of education and the state cooperative universities. At the end of 2010 German universities numbered 418, including institutions with state, private and church funding. Including the departmental libraries, there are almost 3,600 libraries of all shapes and sizes. Together they provide the approximately 2.1 million students with about 173 million books, 2.29 million current periodicals in digital form and 351,000 print editions. The combined acquisitions budgets totalled well over 246 million euros in 2010.

### University Libraries

The primary function of the libraries of the 105 universities and other similar institutions of higher education is to provide the members of their institutions – from student to professor – with the requisite literature for study, research and teaching purposes. Thus they form a functionally homogeneous group, even though they often differ considerably from one another in terms of age, historical development, size of holdings and number of users, and budget etc. However, university libraries can also always be used for scholarly purposes by non-university members, although not always free of charge. Some also

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Library of the *Historicum*, a departmental library of Munich University Library (Bavaria), brought together under one roof collections previously scattered over a number of smaller libraries when it was opened in 1999. It provides the 4,000 students and 250 staff of the history, archaeology and Byzantine studies departments with 325 reading spaces and a reference collection of over 200,000 volumes.

have additional, explicitly regional functions and several participate in the subject specialization scheme (*Sondersammelgebietsplan*) of the German Research Foundation and are responsible for collecting a particular subject. In addition to traditional literature provision on the basis of their own collections, these libraries have for some time now been providing information reference services including databases and electronic publications in the context of the "Digital Library" (*Digitale Bibliothek*).

Most university libraries can put between 1.5 and 2.5 million volumes at their users' disposal. Many older university libraries (Freiburg, Heidelberg, Jena, Tübingen), together with the State and University Library Hamburg (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Hamburg*) which has its roots in the City Library founded in 1479, the



University and City Library of Cologne (*Universitäts- und Stadtbibliothek Köln*) rechartered in 1919, and individual libraries established in the 1960's (Bremen, Düsseldorf, Regensburg), hold between 2.5 and 3 million volumes. The largest libraries, with collections of between 3 to 4 million volumes, include the Library of the Humboldt University of Berlin, the Library of the Johann Christian Senckenberg University in Frankfurt am Main and the State and University Library of Göttingen. The libraries of the smaller institutions of higher education, especially those with a more restricted range of courses, have holdings significantly under the 1 million-volume mark (Hildesheim, Ilmenau). Most university libraries subscribe to between 5,000 and 10,000 current periodicals, including an increasing number of electronic journals in addition to the printed versions. Access follows via the Electronic Periodicals Library (EZB) on the basis of the DFG national licences. Many federal states have introduced tuition fees; however there are great differences in the benefits they bring to university libraries.

University libraries are in general responsible for collecting literature on all subjects, not just those taught at their particular institution. In the 1960s the libraries began to build textbook collections to provide the students with up-to-date editions of the basic literature for their courses. Quite a number of university libraries have taken on one or more of the DFG's Special Subject Fields and make the literature thus acquired available through the national interlibrary loan network. But just as important as these new acquisitions are the collections of older and specialized material often in particular held by the older universities. These may include manuscripts, autographs, personal papers, early imprints, maps, musical scores, and many other kinds of publication. The technical university libraries

have special collections in the form of standards and patents.

The two basic forms most often encountered in the German university library system are the "single-tier" (*einschichtig*) and the "two-tier" (*zweischichtig*) system, with a strong bias towards the adoption of the single-tier structure.

At traditional universities with a two-tier system there is a main university library with closed stacks, a lending area, a textbook collection, and user services such as interlibrary loan and information and reference services. The second tier comprises a variable number of independent departmental, institute, or faculty libraries which are usually non-lending reference libraries, with books arranged by subject on open access. Whilst the central university library focuses on the acquisition of general and interdisciplinary literature, the departmental libraries – which have their own budgets – concentrate on the literature of their subject area, especially highly specialized research literature. To help overcome the disadvantages of this dual system and underpin the collaborative measures introduced since the German Research Foundation drew up

For copyright reasons image is not available

Germany's oldest university in Heidelberg (Baden-Württemberg), founded in 1386, has a two-tier library system with a central University Library and over 100 departmental libraries. Among the Library's world-famous treasures is the Great Heidelberg Song Manuscript, the *Codex Manesse*, with its popular miniatures of Walther von der Vogelweide (Cod. Pal. germ. 848, Fol. 124r).

For copyright reasons image is not available

its recommendations, cooperative schemes have been launched at many universities. However, even in those cases where the university has reformed its constitution so as to put the Director of the Main Library in charge of all library staff and to prescribe an integrated library system, the practical task of replacing a former two-tier by a so-called functional single-tier system is still a difficult task. The exorbitant price increases in journal subscriptions, the availability and management of electronic resources, and the employment of professionally qualified staff are factors which favour the current trend towards centralization.

At the newer universities founded since the late sixties, most of which have a single-tier library system, there is only one library, which combines the functions of both the central university library and of the decentralized departmental libraries. This uniform library structure had also been established in the universities of the GDR and was continued following reunification, but because of on-going problems in the university building sector it has yet not been implemented in all libraries. Single-tier library

The new university library building in Karlsruhe (Baden-Württemberg), opened in 2006, was from the start designed as a round-the-clock library. It provides the students and staff of the Karlsruhe Institute of Technology (KIT), formerly the University of Karlsruhe, with 530 studying places. That the library is equipped with the latest automation technology is clear from its RFID self-issue facilities, its book return machine with automatic sorting of the returned books, the automatic inter-library loan processor for the issue and return of ILL requests, the dispensing machine for the issue and return of cloakroom locker keys and the electronic entry control function during evening and night-time opening hours.

systems are characterized by having one single director who is responsible for the supervision of all library staff, and by the central allocation and distribution of the acquisitions budget. Most of the library work procedures are centralized. The holdings – partially available for lending, partially for reference and onsite use only – are often scattered over several sectional subject libraries, though they may occasionally be concentrated at one location. They are invariably on open access and arranged by subject according to a detailed classification scheme.

### Libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences and other Higher Educational Institutions

The German Universities of Applied Sciences are a relatively new form of higher educational institution, already introduced in the Western German states in the 1970's but not until after 1990 in the Eastern states. They evolved from former engineering schools and higher technical colleges of economics, social work, design and other disciplines. According to the German Council of Science and Humanities there were 203 Universities of Applied Sciences in Germany in 2010 (without the right to award doctorates), of which 60 were non-state funded. Altogether they offered around 2,300 bachelor degrees courses, 1,250 master's courses and more than 450 other courses. In contrast to the classic universities, the Universities of Applied Sciences and technical colleges do not provide their students with a purely academic education but aim instead to equip them with the necessary

practice-related, theory-based knowledge for the independent pursuit of their chosen profession

The libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences do not have the scope of the traditional universal libraries but are more akin to special libraries with the main focus on those subjects taught in their institutions. In accordance with their mandate, these libraries mainly contain basic literature and textbooks, often in multiple copies. The size of the libraries varies enormously. In some cases, several institutions of higher education have been merged to form a single University of Applied Sciences with a library of over 250,000 volumes and up to 1,000 current periodicals. In other cases, however, considerably smaller Universities of Applied Sciences and technical colleges with a correspondingly limited range of courses have resulted in libraries of modest dimensions.

The libraries of the art and music academies reflect the less important role literature plays in music and the performing arts; they are therefore comparatively small. A notable exception is the Library of the Academy of Fine Arts (*Universität der Künste – UdK*) in Berlin (300,000 volumes), which has shared the new “Volkswagen University Library” building with the library of the Technical University since 2004. Libraries are also maintained by the colleges of public administration, the professional academies established in some federal states and by privately-funded institutions of higher education. Only in Baden-Württemberg do independent teachers’ training colleges with corresponding libraries still exist; in the other Federal states, teacher training education has been integrated into the university course structure, or the teachers’ training colleges have been expanded to form universities.

### Special and Technical Libraries

The around 2,700 special libraries, which include public, religious and private institutions, make up the largest and at the same time very varied group within the academic libraries category. Common to all these libraries is their restricted subject range and their association with a particular institution, for which they are the exclusive, or at least the primary, providers of library

services. The acquisition of new literature in special libraries is especially geared to the current and practice-related needs of that institution’s employees and special attention is paid to titles published outside the normal commercial book trade. Printed and electronic journals are far more important in special and technical libraries than books. In science and technology special libraries in particular, online information services are ousting traditional methods of literature provision. The Kekulé Library of the Bayer concern, opened in 1901, was closed in 2005, making way for a virtual works library with no physical book stock.

Cataloguing and indexing often extend well beyond the bibliographic and subject cataloguing scope of the large general academic libraries; they include in-depth documentation and services tailored to the needs of the individual customer. Special libraries are generally reference libraries, although many of them participate in the German interlibrary loan network. Since they usually serve a limited clientele with well-defined information needs and literature requirements, the main emphasis in special libraries is on service.

The over 500 parliamentary, administrative and judicial libraries (*Parlaments-, Behörden und Gerichtsbibliotheken*) form a homogeneous sub-group within the broad special library spectrum. These institutions, most of which were not founded until after the war, mainly exist to serve the needs of the administrative and legislative bodies and have therefore concentrated on the acquisition of legal and political literature. Their collections consist largely of official publications, government documents, and “grey literature” (*Graues Schrifttum*). These, too, are libraries for reference use only and offer either limited access to outsiders or are not open to the public at all.

In addition to the Library of the German Parliament in Berlin mentioned above, other notable libraries in this group are the libraries of the parliaments and governments of the *Länder*, and of the ministries and the supreme Federal administrative authorities. In some cases the libraries may reach a very respectable size, as demonstrated by the Senate Library (*Senatsbibliothek*) in Berlin (485,000 volumes, now part of

For copyright reasons image is not available

The German National Library of Economics (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften – ZBW*) in Kiel (Schleswig-Holstein) is the world's largest special library for business and economic literature, with over four million volumes. In 2001 a 6,400 m<sup>2</sup> extension (architect: Walter von Lom) was inaugurated in 2001. Together with the older building of the Institute for World Economy (Institut für Weltwirtschaft), erected at the turn of the last century as the former guest house of the Krupp family, it forms an impressive complex on the banks of the Kieler Fjord, uniting research departments, library and closed stacks.

the Central and Regional Library), the Library of the Foreign Office (*Auswärtiges Amt*) in Berlin (310,000 volumes, 91,000 maps and atlases), the German Patent Office (*Deutsches Patentamt*) in Munich (970,000 volumes including the patents themselves which number 51 million documents) and the Federal Office of Statistics (*Statistisches Bundesamt*) in Wiesbaden (550,000 volumes).

Among the libraries of the courts of the *Länder* and the Federal Government, those of the Federal Supreme Court (*Bundesgerichtshof*) with 439,000 volumes and of the Federal Constitutional Court (*Bundesverfassungsgericht*) with 371,000 volumes, both of which are located in Karlsruhe, deserve special mention. In the judicial libraries, as indeed in all special libraries, other literature and media forms play an important role alongside the usual extensive holdings of microforms and electronic media, books and journals. For example, the Library of the Federal Constitutional Court maintains an archive containing over 1.2 million indexed press clippings.

The category of *special libraries* in the narrow sense includes the libraries of the Federal Government and *Länder* research institutions, of the scientific associations, and of archives, museums and clinics. Also included are libraries belonging to religious corporate bodies and institutions, including the monasteries, and those maintained by companies, syndicates, associations, and societies. Despite the considerable differences between individual libraries, it is fair to say that they have the following characteristics in common: They concentrate on the acquisition of material related to their main function, usually including a high percentage of "grey" and non-conventional literature; they make intensive use

Autograph manuscripts have traditionally been collected by many academic and research libraries. This illustration shows letters by the writers Friedrich Schiller, Frank Kafka and Günter Grass held by the German Literature Archive (*Deutsches Literaturarchiv*) in Marbach on the river Neckar (Baden-Württemberg). It shares with the National Schiller Museum the goal of collecting all texts and documents on German literature. The Marbach institution combines the functions of archive, library and museum.

of online electronic resources; they undertake in-depth cataloguing of periodical articles and individual book chapters, they are for reference only, and they do not archive older titles of little current interest. The size of their collections varies considerably, ranging from well over 1 million volumes to a few thousand titles. The number of staff varies correspondingly, and many special libraries can best be described as “*One Person Libraries*” (OPL), run by a single qualified librarian. A forum for cooperative exchange is provided by the German Association of Special Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken e. V. – ASpB*), a member of Section V of the German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband*).

There is only room here to give a few examples from the vast spectrum of special libraries spanning all imaginable subject fields. A particularly large number of libraries are to be found in the pure and applied sciences, e.g. the Library of the German Science Museum (*Deutsches Museum*) in Munich, a special library for science, technology and their history (913,000 media units), the Library of the German Weather Centre (*Deutscher Wetterdienst*) in Offenbach (176,000 volumes), the central library of the Research Centre in Jülich (*Forschungszentrum Jülich GmbH*), specializing in modern technology (675,000 media units, 500,000 reports), the library of the German Leopoldina Academy of Researchers in the Natural Sciences (*Deutsche Akademie der Naturforscher Leopoldina*) in Halle (266,000 volumes) and the library of the world-renowned Mathematical Research Institute (*Mathematisches Forschungsinstitut*) in Oberwolfach (72,000 volumes). Examples in the field of medicine are the Central Library of the German

Cancer Research Centre (*Deutsches Krebsforschungszentrum*) in Heidelberg (100,000 media units) and the Physicians’ Central Library of the University Clinic (*Ärztliche Zentralbibliothek des Universitäts-Klinikums*) in Hamburg-Eppendorf (262,000 media units).

In the humanities, which are particularly dependent on literature, special libraries also play an important role in the research process outside the universities. Some examples are: The Library of the Friedrich Ebert Foundation (*Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung*) in Bonn, closely associated with the Social Democratic Party of Germany and specializing in its history and that of the labour movements (764,000 volumes); the Library of the Latin American Institute (*Ibero-Amerikanisches Institut*) in Berlin (1.2 million volumes); the Library of the German National Museum (*Germanisches Nationalmuseum*) in Nuremberg, with collections covering the history of art and culture (630,000 volumes), and the Library of the Research Centre for Military History (*Bibliothek des Militärgeschichtlichen Forschungsamtes*) in Potsdam (250,000 media units). Special mention

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *Johannes a Lasco Library* (Lower Saxony), the oldest library in East Friesland, evolved from the Library of the Reformed Protestant Congregation of Emden and was founded in 1559. In 1993 it was renamed in honour of the Polish reformer Jan Laski, Superintendent of the United Church of East Friesland. In 1995 the Library moved into the renovated “*Great Church*” (*Große Kirche*) in Emden. It is a scholarly special library and research and cultural centre of national repute, and in 2001 was designated “*Library of the Year*” by the dbv.

For copyright reasons image is not available

should be given to the German Literature Archive (*Deutsches Literaturarchiv*) in Marbach on the Neckar River, which as combined library and archive functions as central focus for German literature from the Enlightenment to the present (780,000 volumes, 1,200 personal literary estates, 200,000 images).

Naturally enough, church-funded libraries predominate in the religious and theological field. They serve not only researchers but also the church administration and theological seminaries. Among those libraries funded by the Catholic Church are monastic libraries (*Benediktinerabtei Beuron*, 420,000 volumes), diocesan libraries (*Erzbischöfliche Diözesan- und Dombibliothek* in Cologne with 695,000 volumes) and the libraries of the seminaries (*Bischöfliches Priesterseminar Trier*, 435,000 volumes). Examples of Protestant-funded libraries are those of the regional church organizations (*Landeskirchen*), such as the Nordelbisch Church Library (*Nordelbische Kirchenbibliothek*) in Hamburg (155,000 volumes). Owned by an ecclesiastical civil law foundation, the *Johannes a Lasco Bibliothek* in Emden (98,000 volumes) is a special library for reformed Protestantism (Calvinism) and the ecclesiastical history of the early modern period.

The particular significance of the parliamentary, administrative and judicial (court) libraries for political science, law and economics has already been touched on. In addition, six of the *Max Planck Institutes* specialize in particular branches of law and maintain corresponding special librar-

Despite being one of the largest parliamentary libraries in the world with current holdings of 1.4 million volumes, the Library of the German Parliament (*Bibliothek des Deutschen Bundestages*) had been housed in temporary accommodation since its foundation in 1949. It was not until it moved to the Marie Elisabeth Lüders House (architect Stephan Braunfels), located opposite the Reichstag in Berlin, that it found a fitting home. The Reading Room occupies the rotunda with its circular gallery, houses 20,000 volumes and provides 50 work desks which are arranged, as in a parliament, in semi-circular form.

ies in Freiburg (400,000 volumes), Frankfurt am Main (300,000 volumes), Hamburg (470,000 volumes), Heidelberg (600,000 volumes), and two in Munich (205,000 and 110,000 volumes). The library of the German Federal Bank (*Deutsche Bundesbank*) in Frankfurt am Main (238,000 media units) specializes in collecting material on the monetary, banking and stock market systems.

Some special libraries are located abroad. These include the libraries of the German Archaeological Institute (*Deutsches Archäologisches Institut*) in Athens, Bagdad, Istanbul, Cairo, Lisbon, Madrid, Rome and Teheran, along with the library of the Institute of Art History (*Kunsthistorisches Institut*) in Florence (264,000 volumes, 580,000 photos), the *Bibliotheca Hertziana* in Rome (271,000 volumes), and the libraries of the German Historical Institute (*Deutsches Historisches Institut*) located in London, Paris, Rome, Warsaw and Washington. Their main focus is on archaeology, history, the history of art, and oriental studies, and they actively contribute to the scholarly and cultural exchange with their respective host countries. Somewhat more modest (18,000 volumes) is the library of the German Institute for Japanese Studies (*Deutsches Institut für Japanstudien*) in Tokyo.

The *Goethe Institutes* maintain special libraries and reading-rooms with literature and media about Germany, targeting a broad section of the public in their host countries. They collaborate closely with the language instruction and cultural programmes of their Institutes. Since their task is to provide current information, there is a continuous, albeit slow, turnover of their holdings; they do not archive older materials. The total holdings of all the *Goethe Institute Libraries* together amount to approximately two million books and other media.

## Public Libraries

The public library (*Öffentliche Bibliothek – ÖB*) is the most common kind of library in the Federal Republic of Germany. Around 3,050 academic libraries (regional, university, government and other academic special libraries) are registered in the HBZ database of addresses, compared to around 10,021 registered public library locations (including branch libraries), irrespective of type of funding (DBS, 31.12.2009). German towns, municipalities and administrative districts maintain a total of around 5,400 local public library locations (including branches) and are also responsible for a further 2,600 school libraries and resource centres. In some federal states, the counties have established county libraries (*Kreisbibliotheken*) or county and city libraries (*Kreis- und Stadtbibliotheken*), of which there are about 40. At the level of the parishes and church communities, the Catholic and Protestant Churches also maintain public libraries (about 4,532 in all). If the addresses of all those library institutions registered in the HBZ database – whether public, church or private, and including mobile, music, hospital, school, works and prison libraries, and libraries for the blind – were added together, they would amount to a total of 12,500 locations with full-time or voluntary staff to be reckoned to the public sector.

It should be noted that the number of libraries recorded in the German Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik*) is actually slightly less than the total number of public libraries, since not all libraries submit their data. The 10,021 public libraries maintain overall holdings

For copyright reasons image is not available

In 1998 a former slaughterhouse was converted into a modern *city library* in the city of *Landau* in the Southern Palatinate (Rhineland-Palatinate), housing around 65,000 media. The three-section “house within a house” which accommodates the Library is constructed of steel, glass, wood, brick and sandstone. Like many other public libraries, Landau boasts a library café where readers can meet and communicate.

For copyright reasons image is not available

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *Central Library of the City and Regional Library in Dortmund* (North Rhine-Westphalia) (architect: Mario Botta) was opened in 1999 and set a new accent in urban architecture. A bright, glass-fronted open-access area in the form of a semi-circle or rotunda is set before the long stone main building. The Library’s facilities include a large music library, an art library and a manuscripts department; its holdings total around 1.1 million media.

of more than 123.5 million media, with 370 million items circulating in 2009.

### Local Authority Public Libraries

Local authority public libraries are responsible for the provision of basic literature and media services to the public at large. Of these, 3,427 are run by full-time employees, while 6,594 are run by voluntary or part-time staff. Generally they are known as *Stadtbibliotheken* (city libraries, using the Latin derivation "Bibliothek"), though some are named Stadt- or Gemeinde-*büchereien* (city or local libraries, with the more homely Germanic designation "Bücherei"). They form an essentially tightly-knit library network, though in the rural regions it is sometimes a little patchy and growing thinner due to municipal funding problems. Since local authorities are not legally bound to maintain public libraries, less than half actually do so. Only a few federal states grant financial support to municipalities to set up and operate a public library or for the maintenance of book and media holdings; in all others, funding is the exclusive responsibility of the municipality.

No matter what their funding, public libraries are an important factor in the realization of every citizen's right to "inform himself without hindrance from generally accessible sources" as guaranteed by the Basic Law, Article 5, Paragraph 1. They enable the citizen to participate

in the cultural and social life of the community and so fulfil the requirement voiced by IFLA in its 1994 *Public Library Manifesto*. The public library, with its services and media resources, plays a central role in the education system. At the same time, it helps to promote the principle of equal opportunity for all.

In addition to providing information and general education services, public libraries also make an important contribution to professional training and continuing education, to the promotion of meaningful leisure activities, and especially to the encouragement of reading. In the information society, the teaching of media and information literacy will increase in importance. Furthermore, the public library has become a place of communication and a meeting point, both factors contributing to its increasing significance as cultural centre for a wide range of events.

Public libraries collect non-fiction, including scholarly works from all subject areas, vocational training materials, reference works of all kinds, journals and newspapers, literary and leisure fiction, books for children and young people, and additional collections targeting special user groups, such as books in the languages of the major non-German ethnic groups (Turkish, modern Greek, Russian, etc.). Print holdings have been continually expanded since the 1970's to include first audio-visual media (videos, language and music cassettes) and games, followed in the 1990's by electronic and digital media (compact discs, CD-ROMs, DVDs, Blu-ray discs) and public internet access. Quite a few libraries in large and medium-sized towns have also established art and graphics libraries (*Artothek*, *Graphothek*) or

For copyright reasons image is not available

There are about 120 art libraries (*Artotheken* or *Graphotheken*), maintained either by public libraries, community colleges or art societies. These libraries not only lend pictures and other works of art but also help to establish contact with contemporary artists and to stimulate discussions on modern art. On average, an *Artothek* holds about 1,500 to 2,500 works for loan, primarily reproductions, and a very limited number of originals. This photo shows the Art Collection of the *City Library in Biberach an der Riss* (Baden-Württemberg). In 2009 the library was designated "Library of the Year" for its innovative media and service concept.



music libraries (*Musikbibliothek*) offering access to sheet music and other materials. The internet catalogues of around 200 public libraries provide an online lending service for electronic media (such as e-books, e-papers, e-audios, e-videos etc.). The service has successfully reached out to a large number of users of all ages in a short time; its name ONLEIHE is derived from the words „online“ and the German for lending, „Ausleihe“.

Public library collections in the individual Federal *Länder* differ considerably in size, ranging from 2,000 media units in small local libraries run mostly by volunteers up to between one and three million media in individual metropolitan library systems (Berlin, Bremen, Duisburg, Frankfurt am Main, Hamburg, Hanover, Cologne, Lübeck, Munich, etc.). Most libraries in the larger cities (locations with more than 100,000 inhabitants) can offer their users between 150,000 and one million media units. Only a small percentage of public libraries manage to realize the goal of 2 media units per citizen recommended in library planning documents. In 2009 public spending on new books and media in public libraries amounted to 1.19 euros (in 2001 1.20 euros, in 2005 1,09 euros) per head of the population.

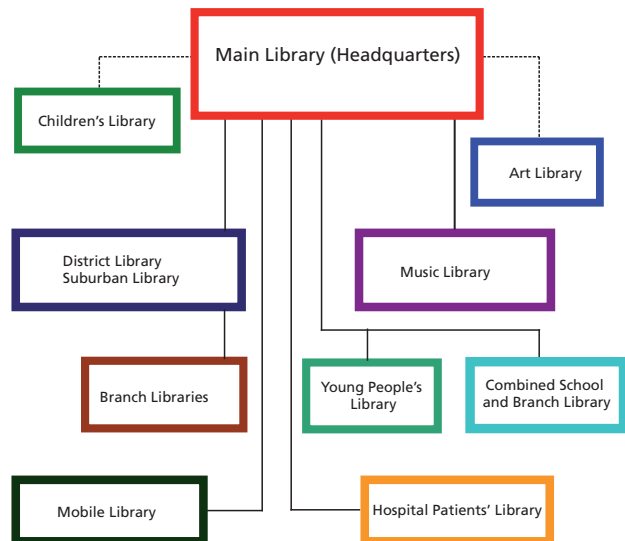
According to the DBS German library statistics for 2009 the following characteristics are typical of the average professionally-staffed public library:

- 400 m<sup>2</sup> space
- 28,00 media units
- around 3.3 full-time staff
- catchment area of around 20,000 inhabitants
- open 18 hours per week
- media provision of 1.4 units per inhabitant, 32 journal subscriptions, 1 PC with internet connection
- on average almost one activity offered per week, with the emphasis on children and school classes
- 15% of the inhabitants are active users (mostly over 18 years old)
- two thirds of inhabitants have visited the library at some time
- 32,000 library visitors per year

- 4.5 media units circulated per inhabitant per year
- ratio of circulation to stock of about 3
- publicly funded to about 95%
- the most highly frequented cultural institution in the local community

The weekly opening times differ considerably, depending on location and size of library. While most libraries run by voluntary or part-time staff in small communities with less than 5,000 inhabitants are often open only four to eight hours a week, libraries with full-time staff in small and middle-sized cities with between 10,000 and 50,000 inhabitants provide between 10 and 25 hours of service. Most large city libraries are open daily from Monday to Saturday and reach an average of more than 40 opening hours per week. With the exception of those run by the churches, local public libraries are closed on Sundays.

Characteristic of public libraries are open access collections arranged by a combination of subjects and target user groups. Public libraries see themselves today as hands-on libraries providing their patrons with a wide range of books and non-book materials geared to their



Model of the organisational structure of an extended metropolitan library system

## LIBRARY DIVERSITY

For copyright reasons image is not available

About 5% of the counties and 3% of the larger cities operate mobile libraries (*Fahrbibliotheken*, *mobile Bibliotheken*, *Autobüchereien*) or book buses (*Bücherbusse*). These custom-converted buses or trucks are mostly equipped with computer facilities for media issue and literature searching. The photos show the book buses of the *Koblenz City Library* (Rhineland-Palatinate) (above) and the *City Library in Frankfurt am Main* in Hesse (below).

For copyright reasons image is not available

in 1901, and the America Memorial Library (*Amerika-Gedenkbibliothek*), opened in 1954. It is a successful example both of German unity and the reunification of Berlin. The ZLB functions as a regional library with regional legal deposit rights; it includes historical holdings and literary estates, and naturally the largest collection of works on Berlin in the world. With its 3.5 million digital and print media units the library provides the population of Berlin with scholarly and other literature and operates as coordinating centre for the district libraries of Berlin.

The public libraries in the larger cities often merge to form a library system with a central library and several branch libraries in the suburbs. In addition, they may also have a number of special units, either at one single or several geographically separate sites, such as a children's and young people's library, a music library, a media centre, an art collection, mobile libraries, and school libraries with branch library function. In some towns there may be a hospital patients' library or a prison library within the penitentiary building (*Justizvollzugsanstalt*).

Mobile libraries in the form of book buses which take between 3,000 and 6,000 media units on regular rounds are not only used in the city perimeter communities, but also in the sparsely populated rural regions. Approximately 91 mobile libraries with around 110 vehicles are used to substitute or augment fixed-site libraries. Statistics show that user numbers remain at a constant high level while the number of vehicles has gone down (in 1995 there were still 150 book buses). In the same way as fixed-site libraries, mobile libraries are also actively used for encouraging reading, offering a wide range of library introductions, reading hours based on the school curriculum and subject-centred projects for pre-school groups and school classes. In the

individual needs and levels. Over the last few years it has become increasingly important to offer tailor-made services to specific user groups, especially in the information field. Most libraries base their acquisitions practice on current demand and weed out unused titles, especially multiple copies. Only either libraries in the larger cities or scholarly city libraries are expected to archive older and special collections, requiring corresponding stack accommodation.

One of the libraries operating – in modified form – along the lines of the former all-in-one library model combining the functions of academic and public libraries is the Central and Regional Library in Berlin (*Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin* – ZLB). The special quality of this library lies in the presentation of its holdings, featuring the direct juxtaposition of popular and highly scholarly works. This concept led to library usage doubling over a ten-year period. The ZLB was established in 1995 as a public foundation, incorporating the Berlin City Library, founded

## LIBRARY DIVERSITY

Federal State	Popula- tion on 31.12.2009	No. of par- ticipating libraries (locations)	Holdings in media units	Total circula- tion	Acquisitions budget (€)	Events, exhibitions, library tours	Library visitors
Baden-Württemberg	10,750,000	1,285	17,499,000	62,532,000	17,358,000	32,000	18,347,000
Bavaria	12,520,000	2,031	22,467,000	66,645,000	17,124,000	44,000	25,127,000
Berlin	3,432,000	70	2,791,000	13,356,000	2,098,000	19,000	5,443,000
Brandenburg	2,522,000	301	4,634,000	9,372,000	2,191,000	12,000	2,751,000
Bremen	662,000	13	693,000	4,209,000	1,085,000	2,000	1,534,000
Hamburg	1,772,000	40	1,696,000	13,481,000	3,261,000	7,000	2,324,000
Hesse	6,065,000	777	7,433,000	18,879,000	5,554,000	18,000	6,509,000
Mecklenburg- Vorpommern	1,664,000	123	2,606,000	5,343,000	1,591,000	5,000	1,684,000
Lower Saxony	7,947,000	1,068	10,758,000	30,216,000	7,648,000	32,000	9,761,000
North Rhine- Westphalia	17,933,000	1,966	24,534,000	77,626,000	22,240,000	62,000	27,055,000
Rhineland- Palatinate	4,028,000	828	5,163,000	11,547,000	3,581,000	13,000	3,104,000
Saarland	1,030,000	131	965,000	1,907,000	643,000	2,000	617,000
Saxony	4,193,000	611	8,507,000	22,513,000	4,687,000	18,000	6,754,000
Saxony- Anhalt	2,382,000	307	4,251,000	7,023,000	1,543,000	9,000	2,238,000
Schleswig- Holstein	2,834,000	167	5,019,000	17,233,000	5,065,000	7,000	3,395,000
Thuringia	2,268,000	303	4,416,000	7,865,000	1,722,000	9,000	2,835,000
Total for the German Fed- eral Republic	82,002,000	10,021	123,432,000	369,747,000	97,391,000	291,000	112,724,000

Statistical review of public libraries for the year 2009 (all local authority and church-funded libraries with full-time and voluntary staff) by federal state, DBS participating libraries only. Source: German Library Statistics (Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik), updated to 31.12.2009

book bus, which makes scheduled calls to the school or kindergarten, the children and young people not only have the time to learn, but also to play, to listen to and tell stories, and to draw and paint, in the hope that they will develop an interest in literature and reading and an enthusiasm for libraries and information.

Official figures list approximately 3,180 city and local community libraries (including branch libraries) run by full-time employees, compared to some 6,594 public libraries run by volunteers or part-time staff, of which 2,155 are owned by local authorities and around 4,406 by the churches. According to the 2009 DBS a total of 49,772 persons work as volunteers in small local or church libraries, whilst there are around 11,385 full-time-equivalent positions in the professionally-run libraries. Of the total holdings of approximately 123,4 million media units, about 78% (96.1 million) are held by libraries headed by a full-time librarian. These libraries account for around 332.8 million or 90% of the 369.7 million circulation transactions annually. In the year 2009, according to the German Library Statistics, approximately 97.4 million Euros (in 2001: 91 million euros; in 2005 89 million euros) were spent on book and media acquisitions, of which around 15% can be attributed to smaller libraries with part-time or voluntary staff. Total public library sector spending on material and staff amounted in 2005 to around 878.1 million euros, of which 516.4 million euros was spent on personnel. Statistically, every German citizen (total population 81.759 million) has 1.5 media

units at his or her disposal; the total public library holdings have an annual turnaround rate of 3.

### State Service Centres for Public Libraries

The German states have established promotional and advisory State Service Centres for Public Libraries (*Staatliche Fachstellen für Öffentliche Bibliotheken*) at regional or state level. These are also known as State Library Agencies (*Staatliche Büchereistellen*), Library Centres (*Büchereizentralen*) or State Agencies (*Landesfachstellen*). The first of these were founded before and after the First World War, but most of them originated after 1949. Although local libraries are the responsibility of the municipalities, the principle of state cultural and educational autonomy makes it incumbent upon the *Länder* to establish and develop an effective public information service network.

The main task of the present 27 State Service Centres for public libraries in Germany is to help local authorities meet professional library standards and develop effective library systems, to advise both state and local authorities on all public library issues, and to give practical assistance when required. The Service Centres are expected to play an active part in the planning of new libraries or the redevelopment of existing ones, to participate in the equipping of mobile libraries and the planning of library buildings, to foster the use of new media and technologies, and to support libraries in the fields of public relations, professional staff de-

Following a century-long peregrination the *Central Library of Hamm City Libraries* (North Rhine-Westphalia) finally found a suitable home in 2010. The Heinrich von Kleist Forum (architects: ap plan Mory, Osterwalder, Vielmo) houses not only the library but also the city adult education centre and the private University of Logistics and Economics, (*Hochschule für Logistik und Wirtschaft*) funded by the SRH Foundation. The Forum also accommodates a general-purpose hall and a bistro. The 180,00 citizens of Hamm have access to a total of 240,00 books and other media held by the central, district and mobile libraries. In 2005 the city libraries were designated nationwide "Library of the Year" although at the time the Central Library was still located in the old building.

For copyright reasons image is not available

velopment, and all activities promoting literature and encouraging reading. At the same time, they have the job of heightening the level of political and social awareness with reference to the indispensable role public libraries play in the modern information society

One of the State Service Centres' most important goals is to offset regional differences and reduce the effects of the disparity between urban and rural areas, which often means that the rural population is at a disadvantage regarding both access to information and to media provision. The range of services offered by the Centres differs enormously from state to state, which usually means in practice that public libraries in small and medium-size communities, school libraries, and their various funding bodies stand to benefit considerably.

In 1952 a working committee was established by the State Service Centres, which was to prove to be the most important national council of its kind. In 2007 it adopted the name: "Professional Conference of German Library Service Centres" (*Fachkonferenz der Bibliotheksfachstellen in Deutschland*). This committee perceives itself as a forum for the exchange of ideas and the representation of joint interests. Besides the annual convention, likewise called the "*Fachkonferenz*" (Professional Conference), and the coordination of new activities and concepts, the "State Service Centre Server" (*Fachstellen-Server*) provides access to general professional information about libraries and the topics covered by the State Service Centres for Public Libraries by making important documents available electronically. In view of the fact that there is no national coordination centre for public libraries in Germany, the Service Centres and the functions they fulfil as a whole are of national importance.

For copyright reasons image is not available

Following a successful local petition in 2005, *Augsburg City Library* (Bavaria) moved from its former inadequate accommodation to a new building, opened in 2009 (architects: Hans and Stefan Schrammel). Transparency is the key architectural feature, emphasized by the use of state-of-the-art energy-saving technology, by intense colour effects and the unusual use of light. Hundreds of mirrors direct daylight into the building's interior, foregoing the need for artificial lighting. Sunlight is refracted by prism rods into the elements of the spectrum, throwing a rainbow of colours onto the white background wall.

For copyright reasons image is not available

A renovated villa combined with an attractive new concrete and glass building is the home of the City Library of Westerstede (*Stadtbücherei Westerstede*) in Schleswig-Holstein. Approximately 25,000 media are on display over 550m<sup>2</sup>. The children's library has North Sea motifs with a lighthouse and raft.

## Public Libraries maintained by the Churches

Considering that just over half of all German local authorities boast at least one public library, the 3,701 Catholic, 869 Protestant and 116 libraries (locations) run by other institutions play a significant role alongside the 5,334 local authority libraries. Almost without exception, however, these ecclesiastical public libraries are located in the old (Western) federal states. In spite of their large numbers, it must be remembered that they lag far behind the municipal libraries not only regarding holdings, acquisitions, budgets and circulation figures but also with respect to opening hours and expenditure on staff. More than 98% of all church-run public libraries are managed by voluntary staff. As far as literature provision and activities aimed at encouraging reading among children and young people are concerned, they nevertheless have an important role to play, especially in communities lacking a local municipal library.

The Protestant and Catholic Churches regard their library work to a large extent as part of their local community work and as a cultural activity. The public church library should encourage communication, offer guidance in questions of faith and offer practical support in promoting of reading and media education.

Usually it is the Catholic or Protestant parishes respectively which are responsible for the public church libraries. The activities of the Catholic libraries are closely linked to the Borromäus Society (*Borromäusverein*, in Bavaria including the St. Michael's Association – *St. Michaelsbund*) – in Munich), founded in 1844, and which also provides a Bonn-based book and media mail order and book review service for public libraries. Until 2003, it also maintained a state-recognized college for public librarianship and a central library there.

The work of both the church library service centres and the public church libraries is governed by umbrella organizations. Responsible for the Protestant libraries is *eliport* – the Protestant literature gateway, formerly the German Association of Protestant Libraries (*Deutscher Verband Evangelischer Büchereien* – DVEB) in Göttingen.

The Catholic side is represented by the Borromäus Society in Bonn, in Bavaria by the St. Michael's Association in Munich. All the umbrella organizations organize conferences for their respective church library service centres to ensure the implementation of library standards and the latest innovations.

## Special Areas of Public Librarianship

### Children's and Young People's Libraries

Because of the particular social, educational and political importance of library work for children and young people in key areas such as encouraging children to read, helping them to enjoy good literature and teaching them media literacy skills, all public libraries give this target user group their special attention. Children and young people up to the age of 14 use the library much more intensively than any other group in the population and in many cities there is a special children's and young people's library, or at any rate a corresponding department within the public library.

For some time now, librarians have been focusing on the four- to twelve-year-olds, and developing children's libraries (*Kinderbibliotheken*) or children's departments (*Kinderabteilungen*) especially for this age group. At first libraries combined their services for children and young people, catering for the literature and media demands of the under-sixteen's. The trend is clearly heading in the direction of separate libraries or zones for the older youngsters. The same goes for the children's departments. Alongside the books and magazines, young library visitors will find an increasingly number of special zones for all kinds of digital media, including electronic gaming consoles for playing, "chilling out", "chatting", working, learning and keeping up to date. Activities for children and young people form an important part of the events programme and public relations agenda in the public library sector. In 2009 public libraries organized over 304,000 events throughout Germany, of which about 70% were directed at the 4-16 age group.

In spite of the wide range of activities on offer, many public libraries are finding it difficult to persuade young people to become regular library users, especially boys between the ages of 13 and 16. They try to entice youngsters back into the library by providing appropriate media and activities in age-related, attractive and colourful surroundings with the emphasis on “cool” design. Young people are often encouraged to take an active part in media acquisition or to help decide on furniture and decorations in the hope of re-awakening their interest in the library.

For copyright reasons image is not available

### School Libraries

The educational and political mandate of the public libraries is at its most obvious in the close relationships they cultivate with schools and school libraries. School libraries may be located in the schools themselves, where they are often called Media Centres; they can also be of the “combined” variety in the form of a branch library within the local city library system. The vast majority of school libraries belong to the first type, but unlike the second variety, they are rarely run by full-time or qualified staff. School libraries provide teaching staff and pupils alike with books and other media; they also carry stocks of popular children’s and young people’s literature alongside printed and digital reference works. In addition to functioning as a learning unit designed to help find information and teach media literacy, they also try to encourage reading and the enjoyment of books.

In spite of the widely-recognized educational and political significance of school libraries, afforded additional weight by the Unesco manifesto “The School Library in Teaching and Learning

The children’s library of the *City Library of Bernburg on the Saale* (Saxony-Anhalt) was completed in 2000 and has around 12,000 media. It was furnished with great imagination and an eye for detail as an adventure reading area. The total library holdings comprise around 65,000 media.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The International Youth Library (*Internationale Jugendbibliothek – IJB*) in Munich (Bavaria), founded in 1948, is a unique research and information centre which also offers scholarships and a program of events. The collections comprise about 580,000 books and other media for children and young people in more than one hundred languages. The Library publishes a number of journals (*Das Bücherschloss*, *The White Ravens*) and indexes (*Die imaginäre Bibliothek*) documenting worldwide book and media production for children and young people.

for All" in 2000, the equipment, furnishing and staffing of many school libraries in Germany is unsatisfactory. Even if a school owns a library at all, it does not usually comply with accepted international standards. Taking such standards as a yardstick, only about 18-20% or about 8,500 of the approximately 43,600 general and vocational schools in Germany, have a satisfactory school library or reading corner. At the very most, 2,500 schools (5%) have well-equipped libraries, seen objectively, and professionally trained librarians are nearly everywhere in short supply. The main reason for this deficiency lies both in the lack of educational, political, institutional and legal guidelines, and in the fact that responsibility for school libraries is not clearly defined.

The situation is particularly critical in the primary, middle and higher secondary schools, hardly any of which have libraries. Only the grammar schools (*Gymnasien*) have any kind of adequate library provision. In very few cases, mainly in the new *Gymnasien*, comprehensive (*Gesamtschulen*) and all-day schools (*Ganztagschulen*), are the required standards on space and media provision sufficiently met. The poor performance of German pupils in the international comparative studies of school pupils' achievement (OECD Programme for International Student Assessment – PISA, 2000 and 2010) clearly demonstrate the consequences of the striking neglect of school libraries by those politically responsible for the German educational system as a whole. However, it is generally felt that things are gradually taking a turn for the better, with improvements having a positive effect in some areas, though by no means all. According

to the 2010 PISA study, the industrial and educational nation Germany ranks only in the middle range of the 65 countries compared worldwide relating to reading ability and textual understanding among 15-year olds, despite considerable effort. The reading ability of this age group has improved by 13 points to 497 points compared to the year 2000. Germany generally lags far behind the top-ranking countries. Schoolchildren in South Korea (539 points), Finland (536) and Japan (520) are nearly two school years ahead of German ninth-years. As demanded by both teachers and education politicians, further support programmes subsidized by the Federal government and the states are desperately needed to help schools and other non-school educational institutions such as nursery schools, libraries and adult education centres

Just under a third of school libraries are supplied and staffed by local public libraries, being treated as branch libraries located in school buildings and open to the public. Over two-thirds are the sole financial responsibility of the school and its municipality. Cooperation between city and school libraries is practiced in many forms, as the Bertelsmann Foundation was admirably able to prove in its long-term project "Library and School" ("*Bibliothek und Schule*"). In some larger cities, School Library Service Centres (*Schulbibliothekarische Arbeitsstellen*) have been established within large city libraries, counties or State Service Centres for Public Libraries (Flensburg, Frankfurt am Main, Hamburg, Cologne, Wiesbaden, Wetzlar). In the face of the increasingly important role of the internet and

The school library or school media centre is also an essential element in the structure of a comprehensive school. It provides a systematically indexed media stock based on the curriculum and which can be used to transfer subject information and media literacy. The library offers a good working environment for extra-curricular project teams and work-groups, for teaching and examination preparation, and for individual learning. Pupils can spend free time over the lunch break in the library as stimulation and relaxation – like here in the Study Centre of the School Media Centre at the *CJD Christophorus School in Königswinter* (North Rhine-Westphalia), which houses 15,000 media in 460 m<sup>2</sup> of space spread over two floors.

For copyright reasons image is not available



digital media in teaching, cooperation with the county and the city image archives, as well as with the state media centres (*Landesmedienzentren*) has been intensified.

The rate at which schools and school libraries have been equipped with PCs and internet access has been accelerated by special sponsorship programmes partly financed by the Federal Government and the *Länder*, partly by private business. The school library situation underwent a definite improvement in 2002, when the states pressed ahead with the establishment of federal-aided all-day schools and focused on school libraries as a means of improving reading standards. Through partnership agreements with the Ministries of Education in nine states, the regional associations of the dbv have placed cooperation between public libraries and (all-day) schools on a firmer footing and have encouraged political discourse on the improvement of both library work and media literacy. A positive impulse was generated by the programme "Education and Support Initiative" (*Initiative Bildung und Betreuung – IZBB*), through which around 6 million euros of federal funding was allocated to the states between 2002 and 2007. However, many experts are concerned that the amendment to the Basic Law following the federalism reform of 2006 will preclude the federal funding of state-level cultural and educational programmes in future.

### Library Services for Special User Groups

Library work for *special user groups*, sometimes known as *social library work* but nowadays more often known as *target-group orientated library work*, is dedicated to providing services especially to persons with specific disabilities or who are in a difficult personal situation. This is one of the areas of library activity which has suffered particularly since the beginning of the 1990s as a result of the cutbacks implemented by the public and church funding institutions. The area seems to be growing in popularity thanks to increased political interest in intercultural and demographic issues. Many experts are calling for measures to increase the social and political acceptance

of this kind of library work and are demanding better funding to ensure that these facilities are available to all. Initially, target-group orientated library work was narrowly defined as the provision of "books on wheels" services to the handicapped at home or to patients in hospital; later prison services were included in this definition. There has since been a distinct widening of the term itself and the goals associated with it. People with special needs, such as the elderly, the socially and physically disadvantaged and persons with migration backgrounds are all now targeted for special library and media provision services.

There are just under a dozen libraries for the blind (*Blindenbibliotheken*), providing the 164,000 blind and around a million sight-impaired people in Germany with information and literature services; most are constituted on a private law basis. They produce and circulate books, periodicals and texts in audio and Braille formats, which they produce in cooperation with a number of associations. Their total holdings comprise about 230,000 sound recordings (audio books and audio journals on audio-cassette or compact disc in DAISY format) and 160,000 books, periodicals and music books in Braille. DAISY, which stands for Digital Accessible Information System, is the name of a worldwide standard for navigable and barrier-free multimedia documents. Most items are borrowed by post, which continues to be free of charge for materials for the blind. The services provided by the libraries for the blind are complemented by those of the church libraries, the special departments for the blind available in some metropolitan libraries, digital text-to-speech-transformers (e.g. in the German National Library), and other facilities. Libraries and associations in Germany have joined forces as the Media Society for the Blind and Sight-Impaired (*Mediengesellschaft für blinde und sehbehinderte Menschen – Medibus*).

In 2009 about 33% of Germany's around 2,090 hospitals and clinics were state-run while 39% were run by charitable institutions and 28% by private enterprise; the number of privately-funded clinics is growing. Of these, 287 or about 14% according to the DBS, have a

Patients' Library (*Patientenbibliothek*) providing personal literature and other media services to patients during their stay, or a Hospital Library (*Krankenhausbibliothek*) serving the hospital staff. Their holdings, averaging 6,000 to 8,000 media, and the services of their staff are intended to form part of a holistic concept of health care designed to promote the patients' rapid recovery and to meet their demand for information on their illness. The "Guidelines for Patients' Libraries" (*Richtlinien für Patientenbibliotheken*) have established an important professional basis for the work of librarians in hospitals. In the wake of recently introduced legal standards on hospital quality control and the stipulated certification procedure associated with them, patients' libraries perceive themselves as an important factor in this quality control procedure.

A distinction should be made between hospital libraries serving the patients and the special medical libraries (*medizinische Fachbibliotheken*) serving the clinic physicians, which belong to the category of scientific special libraries. New standards for these libraries were introduced in 2004, outlining goals and guidelines for buildings, budgeting, staffing and other resources.

Around 220 German prisons maintain small prison libraries (*Gefängnisbibliotheken*), also called prisoners' libraries, with average holdings of about 2,500 media units; they are the responsibility of the federal states. Prison libraries are for entertainment, leisure and further education

purposes and are intended to help former offenders re-integrate into the normal social and work environment on their release. The fact that nearly 70% of prisoners take advantage of these libraries shows how important they are. Professional librarians, aided by prisoners, are employed in only a few federal states. Section 8 of the dbv is the platform for the exchange of professional information among prison librarians. In North Rhine-Westphalia there are Library Service Centres for Prison Libraries in both Münster and Cologne, while in Hamburg the Service Centre of the Book Halls is responsible for the penitentiary library. In 2007 Münster Prison Library was designated "Library of the Year".

### Other Libraries

Besides the categories already listed, there are a number of other libraries, comparable in their function to public libraries, but open to a limited group of users only. For instance, in addition to its special military libraries, the German Federal Armed Forces (*Deutsche Bundeswehr*) maintain numerous smaller "troop libraries" (*Truppenbüchereien*), which provide general information and entertainment for the soldiers, with holdings of audio media and DVDs. Only company employees have access to the diminishing number of *company works libraries* (*Werkbibliotheken*), of which only about 15-20 still exist; their purpose is to provide their users with information on general topics and leisure interests in addition to material for professional training and continuing education purposes and they thus have a quite different function to the company's techni-

For copyright reasons image is not available

Like many other public libraries, the *Main City Library in Bremen* has equipped different areas to cater for special user groups. The young people's library "Teen Spirit" was designed with the target group in mind and with the help of young people's focus groups. The special shelving system by the library suppliers ekz and trendy furniture help to create an atmosphere which encourages the youthful users to spend time in the library, either indulging in a little "cool" surfing at the eight PC and internet terminals or playing computer games at one of the eleven multimedia computers.

cal library, which serves the interests of research and development within the company and is classed as a special library.

## Information and documentation centres

With the Federal Programme for the Promotion of Information and Documentation 1974–1977 (*Programm der Bundesregierung zur Förderung von Information and Dokumentation 1974–1977 – luD-Program*) there began the systematic development of a network of information and documentation centres. Since subject-oriented information provision is basically regarded as a commercial undertaking which has to hold its own in the market, the first of these luD programmes (and to an even greater extent its successors) was seen more as a contribution to the economy than to the advancement of science. Hence these programmes concentrated from the outset on science and engineering.

The most important outcome of the luD Programmes affecting libraries was the establishment of subject-based information systems (*Fachinformationssysteme – FIS*) together with corresponding subject-based information centres (*Fachinformationszentren – FIZ*) formed by merging already existing institutions. The development of subject-specific databases and the increasing numbers of electronic records led to a rising demand for this literature, especially for journal articles. Initially it was the task of the Central Subject Libraries (*Zentrale Fachbibliotheken*) to provide the documents indexed in the databases of the Fachinformationszentren; today the centres perform part of this function themselves using electronic delivery services. Since this kind of information is a commercial

commodity, a charge is made for all these services, from searching to document delivery.

The German Society for Information Science and Information Practice (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informationswissenschaft und Informationspraxis e.V. – DGI*), founded in 1948, forms an important interface between the various information specialists operating in libraries and documentation units; its goal is to define new perspectives for information services and to develop new techniques in knowledge management.

The *FIZ Karlsruhe – Leibniz Institute of Information Infrastructure*, a non-profit service institution, is a good example of a renowned institute charged with the task of making published scientific information available worldwide and providing the accompanying services. Its goal is to promote the national and international transfer of scientific knowledge and innovation.

Since 1983, the main function of the *FIZ Karlsruhe* has been to host *STN International (Scientific and Technical Information Network)* in Europe. *STN International* is currently one of the leading online scientific and technical database providers: 200 bibliographic and factual databases with about 800 million structured documents can be accessed via its online network. All branches of the natural sciences and technology are represented, together with international patent information. In cooperation with its partner libraries, among them the German Central Subject Libraries (*Zentrale Fachbibliotheken*), the *FIZ Karlsruhe* delivers the primary sources ordered by

For copyright reasons image is not available

A rare example of a company works library can be found in *Burghausen* (Bavaria). The company *Wacker Chemie AG* maintains a works library with holdings of about 40,000 media for its 10,000 employees and their families. The library was endowed in 1921 by the company's founder Alexander Wacker to provide "instruction and entertainment". It is open 19 hours per week, employs three staff members and has a registered circulation of 120,000 items per year (2009).

## LIBRARY DIVERSITY

its clients. The FIZ's KnowEsis is an innovative e-science solution underpinning the entire research process from concept to publication, independently of the subject area.

A fresh attempt at improving cooperation, especially between the specialist information centres and the national subject libraries, was the launching of the "information networks" at the start of the 21st century. The project was initiated by the BMBF's strategic position paper published in 2002 under the title "Activating Knowledge through Information Networks" (*Information vernetzen – Wissen aktivieren*). Database providers, libraries and research institutions in a given subject area cooperate within these information networks to set up and administer joint literature and information services. As professional providers of full-text access to scholarly texts, including commercial products, the information networks offer their customers the choice between a subscription or pay-per-view service. Alongside the FIZ in Karlsruhe and

DIMDI in Cologne a number of these information networks have been created for technology (Frankfurt am Main), chemistry (Berlin), planning and building (Stuttgart), the agricultural sciences (Bonn) and law and psychology (both in Saarbrücken). Together with the Virtual Subject Libraries and the Electronic Periodicals Library they form the nucleus of a national knowledge portal.

The subject information landscape in Germany continues in a state of upheaval. In 2009 the Federal and State Joint Science Conference (*Gemeinsame Wissenschaftskonferenz des Bundes und der Länder – GWK*) commissioned the Leibniz Association to develop a framework for a subject information infrastructure. The commission proposed the development of a global concept embracing all the most important protagonists and detailing a suggested structure for Germany. As a result, in October 2009 the GWK commissioned the Leibniz Association to develop an appropriate national subject information infrastructure plan, to be submitted in early 2011.

## 4 PROFESSIONS AND ASSOCIATIONS

### The Organization(s) of German Librarianship

#### The Library Professions

Librarians are professionals responsible for the transfer of all types of stored information and for dealing with the fundamental raw material “knowledge” – whether they are employed in university libraries, school libraries, or in the special libraries of business enterprises. Their task of collecting, managing, indexing, cataloguing, and acting as intermediary for books and other media makes them professional partners in the media and information fields. They are already today, and will in greater measure continue to be in the future, navigators through the many data networks, making electronic information accessible and ensuring its quality and relevance are maintained.

In Germany, the spectrum of library work has expanded considerably along with the changing demands on libraries and this is not just due to the rapid development of information and communications technology. The expectations which library users today place in media, information and reference services are radically different from the problems and information needs of users twenty or thirty years ago. The high level of these expectations is most probably a result of increasing democratic awareness amongst the public at large, who rightly demand that the modern library be a user-friendly, competent, up-to-date and well-equipped service unit.

The check-out and return of books and other media play an important role in the work of the typical Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellter für Medien und Informationsdienste* – FAMI). The photo shows the modern circulation desk at the main library of Düsseldorf City Libraries (*Stadtbüchereien Düsseldorf*) in North Rhine-Westphalia. Often integrated into the circulation area are information and user services, the registration of new users and other activities now being often assigned to FAMIs, who call on fully-qualified librarians only when dealing with particularly complex enquiries.

The various professions in the areas of information, literature, and modern media have gained in relevance and scope during the last decades. In addition to the traditional librarian (*Bibliothekar*), new professions have evolved, such as Documentalist (*Dokumentar*), Information manager (*Informationswirt*), Archivist (*Archivar*), Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellter für Medien- und Informationsdienste*) and Information Broker – all these are branches of the information profession with converging, albeit still distinctive activities. Whilst information brokers trade in the “marketable aspects” of information, which they acquire via data networks for commercial purposes, documentalists in documentation and information centres are responsible for optimal indexing and for providing current information via data from economics, research, and technology. Archivists in the community and state archives are mostly concerned with the storage and indexing of documentary evidence and sources from past and present. All these professions now employ trained technical staff as technical assistants in libraries, image agencies, archives and documentation centres. Librarians and information managers (now with degrees at bachelor and master’s level) form an indispensable link between all these professions

For copyright reasons image is not available

and the corresponding libraries, whatever their holdings and services.

Today there are approximately 23,000 full-time trained professionals in Germany in the general sector of libraries and similar institutions. In addition, there are 50,000 volunteers or part-time staff in smaller public libraries and school libraries supported by municipalities and churches, and who acquire the practical skills for their library and information work through specialist continuing education courses and training sessions.

The rapid development of information and communications technologies and the transition to the information and service society has led to extensive changes in the professional landscape generally, not only in this country. This transition goes hand in hand with the noticeable convergence not only of related professions but also of vocations hitherto associated with other fields. This has given rise to whole new areas of employment, such as electronic publishing, multimedia, the culture industry, and media design.

The German employment market affords information specialists increasingly good prospects, providing applicants are mobile, flexible and achievement-oriented. It is important that they gain as much experience as possible through internships, projects of their own, or student jobs during their training, that they are familiar with the terms and conditions of current employment contracts and that they can show they are at home with databases, internet technology and digital archive systems. However, exact forecasts regarding the future employment outlook for information specialists have generally proved to be extremely inaccurate.

The noticeable convergence of professional training schemes for the different information professions has been preceded by a long period – influenced by German tradition – of demarcation. The professional image has been influenced for decades not only by the separation of the public and academic library sectors but also by demarcation issues between librarians and documentalists which still exist today. Even within the staff structure of a single library the professional landscape is often finely subdivided.

The reasons for this are less the result of the structure of German librarianship than of German labour and professional occupational legislation. Since public service careers for the so-called academic and research library service were first established at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, it has been the strictly hierarchical structure together with all its corresponding rules and regulations rather than the principles of customer service which has led to the pronounced value placed on status and the resulting need for demarcation.

At the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, the distinction between the professional sectors is fading somewhat, in favour of new subdivisions rating libraries and their staff by size, targeted user groups, the level of professional qualifications, or alternatively by library performance indicators or the scope of their services. Within the professions and their training programmes, the main emphasis in the future will be on those core qualifications, skills, and competencies common to all the professional branches and required of every library employee.

In publicly-funded libraries, library staff are either employed on a salaried basis as “employees in the public service” (*Beschäftigter im Öffentlichen Dienst*, formerly *Angestellter* or *Arbeiter*) or as tenured public servants. Library staff with civil servant status have a special service and loyalty obligation towards their employers and are paid according to federal or state laws. Library staff with “employee” status (*Angestellte*) are paid according to private law. For decades they were bound by the collective wage agreements known as “The Federal Employees’ Tariff Agreement” (*Bundesangestelltentarif – BAT*), negotiated by the unions and the public employers, until this was succeeded in 2006 at municipal and federal level by the “Federal Collective Tariff Agreement for the Public Service” (*Tarifvertrag Öffentlicher Dienst – TVöD*) and at state level by the “Federal State Collective Tariff Agreement” (*Tarifvertrag der Länder – TV-L*). The hierarchical structure of the remuneration system in the TVöD and TV-L is similar to the salary brackets applicable to the public servants.

In the public service, the tenured *Beamte* and the corresponding *Angestellte* are assigned

to different career bands: the unskilled or basic (*einfacher*), the skilled or middle (*mittlerer*), the upper (*gehobener*), and the higher (*höherer*) service levels. These bands also determine their salary or pay scale, assignment to a particular band depending on education and qualification. A similar ruling applies to the staff of church-run libraries but not to employees in company libraries, where employment contracts are negotiated on an individual basis and are subject to normal civil legislation. Here salaries are only occasionally based on those of the public service tariffs.

### The History of Professional Librarianship Training

Professional training for librarianship and other related professions has been in constant flux during the last two decades, and it would be presumptuous to try to cover everything. On the one hand, the constant changes are an expression of a political readiness to adapt to current developments, especially at European level, and to modernize course content accordingly. On the other, they also reflect the uncertainty of the political decision-makers who have seen the amalgamation and fusion of individual training institutions as the only possible solution in view of the general pressure to cut costs.

Formal training for the library profession did not begin in Germany until the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. In 1893, the Prussian government passed a decree stipulating professional training for librarians and prescribing its content. Those with a university degree who aspired to become librarians were required to complete a postgraduate training programme. The training scheme for the higher public service career band (*Referendarausbildung*) can be traced back both to this Prussian regulation and to an ordinance

Well-equipped modern working areas in university and higher education libraries help to meet the needs of students for books and non-book materials. The photo shows the Multimedia Reading Room of the *German National Library* (Deutsche Nationalbibliothek) in *Frankfurt am Main* (Hesse), popular with students and boasting the latest in modern technology and a multimedia processing system supporting the acquisition, administration, retrieval and presentation of electronic publications.

of the Bavarian government of 1905; it has for decades has been the standard method of training for academic and research librarians and is still in force in some federal states today. The professional librarianship training system upon which most of the courses in the Universities of Applied Sciences are based began in 1914 with the founding of the first library school in Leipzig.

As a result of the German partition, librarianship training developed along heterogeneous lines following the Second World War and particularly in West Germany was strongly influenced by the federal structures and sectoral demarcation there. After reunification, the further reform and continuing development of librarianship training was anything but uniform. Even today the general picture is still very higgledy-piggledy, though there is agreement on a common subject content core. Standard content includes above all management studies, marketing and library management, database and internet applications, search strategy, information and communications technology, information services, service and customer orientation and the literature and media markets. Another decisive characteristic of all study and training courses is the emphasis placed on the practical aspects of librarianship.

For copyright reasons image is not available

## Librarianship Training and Training Institutions in Germany

In practice, professional library activities in most academic and larger public libraries are organized on four levels: Alongside academic librarians with a university education (*Höherer Dienst*/ Master's degree) work certified librarians or qualified information managers with a professional librarianship or information management diploma from a University of Applied Sciences, followed by Technical Library Assistants for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellte für Medien- und Informationsdienste – FAMI*) or *Bibliotheksassistenten* at the middle public service level and finally the semi-skilled library employees at the basis.

Most librarians employed at the higher level (*höherer Dienst*) have a university degree and have usually completed a special graduate course in librarianship following the completion of their first degree, either in the form of a four-semester graduate course or a two-year training programme. In some cases the courses are part of the traditional preparatory training for the public service, in others the participants have the status of normal students. In either case the training programme will include both practical and theoretical aspects. The practical part involves a period spent in a certified academic training library while the theoretical part consists of formal teaching at a university institution of higher education. At the end of the two-year training programme, candidates sit the state examination for the higher public service (*Staatsexamen*). In the past, those who chose the four-semester graduate course qualified as "Academic Librarian" (*Wissenschaftlicher Bibliothekar*) or "Magister Artium" (M.A.); since 2007/2008 most have qualified with the degree title "Master of Library and Information Science" (MALIS).

Typically, librarians at the higher level in academic and research libraries will be responsible for the selection and classification of subject literature, for reference and advisory services, for the coordination of internal and external library organization, and for planning of, and cooperation within, projects involving new information

technologies. Many of these activities require leadership skills.

The Universities of Applied Sciences are responsible for the bachelor and master's degree courses in librarianship. The previous "library schools" have gradually transformed to become independent Universities of Applied Sciences; they have since been incorporated into the larger Universities of Applied Sciences as separate departments offering appropriate study courses. A degree course formerly lasted between seven and eight semesters and included work experience periods of variable length or practical training semesters as an integral part of the course structure. The bachelor's degree courses generally last for six semesters, the master's degrees a further four semesters. Practical work experience plays a greater role in these new bachelor courses than in the traditional university degree courses. In the federal, state and local government public services, qualified library staff with diploma or bachelor's degree are assigned to the upper public service level.

Training for the support-staff qualification of "Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellte für Medien- und Informationsdienste – FAMI*) lasts three years and is part of the dual system of vocational training. FAMIs are assigned to the middle public service band (*mittlerer Dienst*). A special aspect of this training programme, established in 1999, is that its content centres round five different special study areas: in addition to libraries, the trainee can choose to concentrate on archives, general information and documentation centres, image agencies, or medical documentation units. Vocational education committees in the Chambers of Commerce (*Industrie- und Handelskammer – IHK*) and special units at the district administrative or top state government level advise on and coordinate the individual components. An Education and Training Master Plan (*Ausbildungsrahmenplan*) and an on-the-job training plan define sequence, objectives and content of the combined theoretical and practical training programme. There are no fixed formal entry requirements for this qualification; most candidates graduate from high school with



		Degrees
Berlin	Humboldt-University of Berlin Institute of Library Science	Library and information science Bachelor (BA) Master (MA) Doctorate
Darmstadt	Darmstadt University of Applied Sciences, Dieburg Campus: Faculty of Media Studies (Information Science and Engineering)	Information Science Bachelor of Engineering (BA) Master of Engineering (MA)
Hamburg	Hamburg University of Applied Sciences: Department of Information	Bachelor of Library and Information Management (BA) Master of Information Science and Management (MA)
Hanover	Hanover University of Applied Sciences: Faculty of Media Studies, Information and Design; Dept. of Information and Communication	Bachelor of Information Management (BA) Master of Information and Knowledge Management (part-time) (MA)
Cologne	Cologne Univ. of Applied Sciences: Faculty of Information and Communication, Dept. of Information Science	Library Science Bachelor (BA) Master of Library and Information Science (MALIS – part-time, at the Centre for Library and Information Science)
Leipzig	Leipzig University of Technology, Economics and Culture (HTWK): Faculty of Media Studies	Library and Information Science Bachelor (BA) Master (MA)
Munich	University of Public and Judicial Administration: Dept. of Archive Management and Librarianship	Certified Academic Librarian (FH) Certified Archivist (FH)
Potsdam	Potsdam University of Applied Sciences: Faculty of Information Science	Bachelor of Library Management (BA) Bachelor of Information and Dokumentation (BA) Master of Information Science (MA) and MA Archive Studies (MA)
Stuttgart	Stuttgart Media University (HdM)	Library and Information Management Bachelor (MA) Master (MA)

### Librarianship Training Institutions in Germany

the secondary school leaving certificate known as the *Mittlere Reife*.

Training institutions for librarianship can be categorized as follows:

- *Vocational training schools (Berufsschulen)* offering training courses for the middle public service band for FAMILs opting for the library specialization
- *Departments of Library and Information Science (Fachbereiche für Bibliotheks- und Informationswesen)* or of Information and Communication Science (*Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaft*) at public institutions of higher education or internal administrative academies.
- *University degree programmes in library science (universitäre Studiengänge der*

*Bibliothekswissenschaft*), of which the only example is at the Humboldt University in Berlin at the Institute for Library Science (*Institut für Bibliothekswissenschaft*), which offers distance-learning postgraduate and conventional bachelor's degree courses.

Courses of study for the library professions at universities, institutions of higher education and universities of applied science are possible today at a total of nine locations in Germany – see illustrated plan of the training institutions.

## Continuing Professional Education and Training for Library Staff

In order to meet demands for enhanced professional standards in librarianship and information science, it is essential to develop a systematic and well-structured programme of continuing professional education and training for library staff according to the principles of life-long learning. This involves above all incorporating internal staff development measures leading to further qualifications into the basic library management structure.

In Germany, there are many institutions offering continuing professional education for librarians, of which the foremost are:

- the professional associations dbv, BIB and VDB with their regional subsections
- the library network headquarters
- the state, university and regional libraries
- the universities and Universities of Applied Sciences offering librarianship courses (e.g. the Centre for Library and Information Science Training at the University of Applied Sciences in Cologne, the Training Centre at the Freie Universität Berlin or the part-time distance learning courses at the University of Applied Sciences in Potsdam)
- the public and church library service centres
- the larger city libraries
- the ministries and administrative authorities (e.g. the training course database of the qualification gateway e-teaching.org)
- the Chambers of Commerce (to certify aptitude)
- the state-owned library suppliers ekz-Bibliotheksservice GmbH
- commercial enterprises and foundations, private institutions, societies and associations in the educational and cultural sectors.

With around 800 continuing professional education courses being offered annually, the selection is both comprehensive and varied, although following the closure of the German Library Institute (*Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut*) in 2002 there is sore need of a coordinating body for all professional education providers and a central professional education and training database. At the end of 2005 the University of Applied Sciences

in Hamburg was able to set up the professional education portal "*Wissen-bringt-weiter*" (Knowledge Helps You Go Further) under the aegis of the KNB. The portal provides regular information on a wide range of library training courses.

## Institutional Cooperation Among Libraries in Germany

The principle of state cultural autonomy and Germany's federal structure are the main reasons for the surprising variety of independent libraries and funding bodies. This variety gives individual ideas and creative methods free rein, though individualization carries with it an inherent danger of fragmentation. But since no library is self-sufficient, cooperation between libraries and the establishment of national-level institutions and services assume a particularly important role. It is not only a question of preventing libraries from duplicating each other's work unnecessarily and helping them to improve their services; the main objective is to fight fragmentation by developing appropriate strategic and structural library policies.

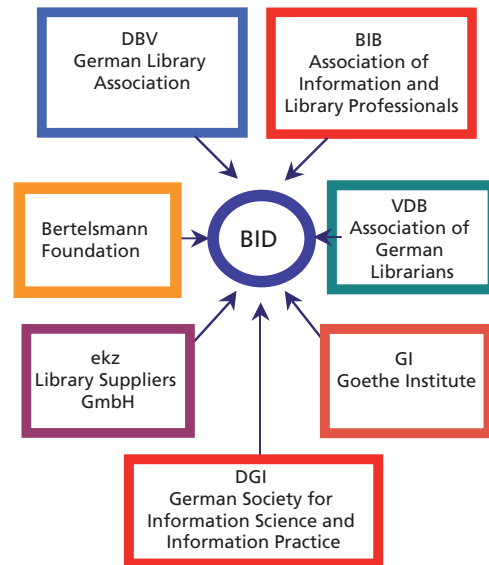
Since the onset of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, numerous library organizations, institutions, and associations with national functions have been created. These have moulded librarianship in Germany and inspired new developments. Some of them can look back on a long tradition.

There are both advantages and disadvantages to the fact that library cooperation is not state-regulated or organized. It manifests itself primarily within the framework of non-government professional societies and institutional associations. It is important to distinguish between these two categories: Professional societies consist of qualified librarians and other library employees who have joined together to further their mutual professional interests. They also function as professional discussion forums and public representatives of their members' joint interests. Institutional associations are made up of libraries, library-related institutions and representatives of their funding bodies; their mission is the promotion of common library objectives, the development of uniform standards and the

enhancement of the position of libraries and librarians in politics and society.

In the mid 1990's an unsuccessful attempt was made to merge the four (now two) associations of professional librarians BIB and VDB with the institutional association dbv to form a single German organization. The task of developing an organizational structure like that of Switzerland, Great Britain, the United States, or, at international level, of IFLA, still remains a long-term goal in the eyes of many German professional librarians.

The most important professional bodies are those societies, associations, institutions and foundations united under the umbrella organization Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (*Bibliothek und Information Deutschland* – BID). In addition to the association-based organizations, an increasing number of foundations and private institutions such as the Bertelsmann Foundation, the library suppliers ekz-Bibliotheksservice GmbH and the Goethe Institute have added their support.



Members of the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID)

When the DGI became a member in 2004 the name was changed to Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (*Bibliothek und Information Deutschland* – BID).

The BID e.V. (= *eingetragener Verein*, registered non-profit-making society) is German librarianship's umbrella organization, uniting the three institutional and professional associations, an information scientists' association, the library suppliers ekz and two prominent cultural establishments. As non-profit association the BID represents the joint interests of all its members at national and European level, and on international committees. Its goals are the promotion and development of services and innovative ideas in the field of information provision with libraries as guarantors of democratic information and knowledge structures. The BID is responsible for coordinating public relations in the librarianship and information sectors and furnishing political decision-makers with effective arguments and background information. In the course of its work the BID works together with organizations at federal, state and local government levels, and with other related non-profit institutions and boards.



### The Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID) as Umbrella Organization

The harmonization of professional and library political interests necessary for the further encouragement of interlibrary cooperation and the effective representation of library interests before the public was first realized in the 1960's and 1970's with the foundation (in 1963) of the German Library Conference (*Deutsche Bibliothekskonferenz* – DBK) and the compilation of the Library Plan '73 (*Bibliothekspan '73*). To strengthen the public image further, the National Federation of German Library Associations (*Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände e.V.* – BDB) was founded in September 1989 as successor to the German Library Conference.

The BID is based in Berlin. Its organs are the General Meeting or Members' Assembly (*Mitgliederversammlung*), the Executive Committee (*Vorstand*) and the President. Annual reports document the BID's work. The BID is a member of the European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations (EBLIDA) and of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA). The BID's international activities are an important aspect of its work and are funded by the Foreign Office in Berlin and the Commissioner of the Federal Government for Culture and Media (*Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien – BKM*). The Library and Information International (*Bibliothek & Information International – BII*), a Standing Commission of the BID, has been commissioned by the umbrella organization to coordinate the transfer of international know-how in Germany and overseas by helping librarians and information science professionals to spend time studying and working abroad.

The umbrella organization awards the Karl Preusker Medal (*Karl-Preusker-Medaille*) in memory of Karl Preusker (1786–1871), the founder of the first German public library in Grossenhain near Dresden on 24.10.1828. The medal is awarded to committed individuals in recognition of special services to German librarianship.

The BID publishes the monthly journal *Bibliotheksdienst* (Library service). The organization hosts the Leipzig Information and Library Congress, one of the largest professional conferences in Germany. Since 2004 the Congress has been held before the Spring Fair exhibition in Leipzig.

In 2009 the BID published the promotional brochure "21 Good Reasons for Good Libraries" (*21 gute Gründe für gute Bibliotheken*), aimed at furthering the cause of libraries and their services among political and other decision-makers. It forms the professional foundation for political discourse and is designed to support the library lobby. The brochure contains the supplement "Basic principles of good libraries – guidelines for decision-makers", offering lines of argument relating to "Indicators of Achievement and Quality" for public and higher education libraries and to library legislation.



## German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv)

The history of the German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband – dbv*) began in the western half of divided Germany in 1949. In the GDR, a separate German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband – BV*) was established in 1964 to represent libraries with professional staff and other professional institutions concerned with librarianship, information and documentation. Until 1990 it was known as Library Association of the German Democratic Republic (*Bibliotheksverband der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*).

After the reunification of Germany, the West and East German Library Associations merged to form the current German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V.*). This new broad-based institutional association now has approximately 2,000 members. Regular membership is open to all professionally-run libraries, state and church library service centres, and other institutions related to librarianship and documentation.

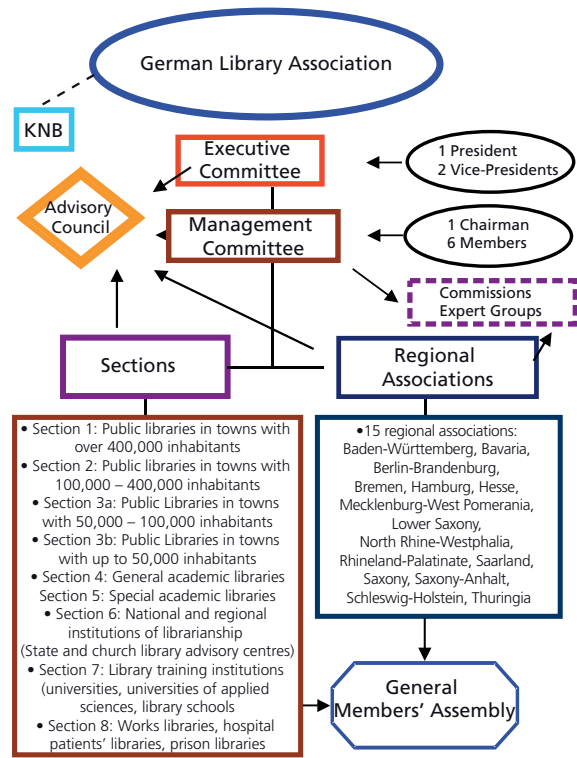
The dbv has set itself the goal of bringing the role of libraries in culture and education to the fore and emphasizing their importance for society. In particular it focuses on promoting German librarianship and cooperation between libraries and institutions of librarianship by framing the political requirements of the library sector and adopting an official stance on fundamental professional issues in the form of appraisal reports and recommendations. Foremost among its activities are:

- Public communication of the goals and functions of libraries
- Lobbying and liaison with parliaments and ministries at federal and state level, and with local umbrella organizations and regional authorities

- The development and implementation of standardized and effective solutions to professional problem issues
- Support for scholarly research on German librarianship
- The development of promotional programmes in cooperation with the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*), the Federal Ministry of Education (*Bundesbildungsministerium*), the Commissioners for Culture and the Media (*Beauftragte für Kultur und Medien*) and the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education and Cultural Affairs (*Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder – KMK*)
- The organization and realization of professional information and continuing professional education courses
- The provision and supply of professional information
- The promotion of nationwide cooperation between the libraries of all sectors
- European and international cooperation and the sharing of experience in librarianship

The dbv's lobbying activities are largely channelled through its regional associations and sections. The 15 regional associations were, and still are, responsible for launching many new ideas, such as the regional library awards, state-level library days, library legislation initiatives and programmes to secure the survival of libraries and library service centres. The associations represent the interests of their member libraries at state level, provide the framework for the mutual exchange of information and knowledge, and bring library-related topics to the attention of the relevant federal political bodies. To this end they screen the programmes of the political parties with reference to key issues, organize training courses and coordinate regional events designed to capture the attention of the general public.

Within the dbv the chairmen of the regional associations support the work of the executive committee in their function as members of the advisory council. Many of the regional associations are registered non-profit making organizations. The Association of Libraries of the State of North Rhine-Westphalia (*Verband der*



Member organs and division of the dbv into sections and regional associations

*Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen e.V – vbw*), founded in 1948, deserves special mention as the largest regional association with around 350 members; it publishes the highly-regarded scholarly journal "Pro Libris".

The dbv is structured into eight sections, grouping together libraries of similar size and sector and enabling them to exchange knowledge and discuss pertinent issues. Further specific topics are dealt with by working groups within each section. The work of the sections covers a wide spectrum of subjects, ranging from questions relating to project funding, the provision of digital services, quality management measures and the promotion of open access to the structuring of bachelor and master's degree courses in the field of information studies or discussions on the importance of library work with specific user groups.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The German Special Libraries Association (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken e.V. – ASpB*), founded in 1946, is also a member of Section 5 and welcomes both institutional and personal memberships, with over 1,000 current members. Its aim is to promote cooperation between special libraries, represent the interests of this particular type of library in the public arena, and to contribute to the exchange of professional expertise. To this end, the ASpB hosts a biennial professional conference and publishes the proceedings.

The Conference of Training and Degree Courses in Library and Information Science (*Konferenz der informations- und bibliothekswissenschaftlichen Ausbildungs- und Studiengänge – KIBA*) represents the interests of the training and degree courses at the general and applied sciences universities in the field of library and information science (LIS) in Germany. Structurally speaking, the KIBA is a member of Section 7 of the dbv and also belongs to the Training Section of the German Association for Information Science and Information Practice (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informationswissenschaft und Informationspraxis e.V. – DGI*). As lobby group

The “Heinrich Heine” City Library in Halberstadt (*Stadtbibliothek Heinrich Heine Halberstadt*) (Saxony-Anhalt) moved into a former chapel in the 600-year-old Petershof on the Domplatz in the year 2000 and in the same year was selected as the “Library of the Year”. Around 100,000 media are displayed over 1,770 m<sup>2</sup>. The high rooms enable the use of mezzanine floors, thus increasing the amount of usable space.

for the training of information professionals it asserts its influence on professional associations, politicians, business and other training institutions outside the higher education sector. At a European level it represents its members in international organizations such as the *European Association for Library and Information Education and Research* (EUCLID).

In 2003 the dbv expanded the scope of its activities when it assumed responsibility for the Commissions and Expert Groups of the former German Library Institute (*Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut – DBI*). The Commissions operate on a voluntary basis and are serviced by the offices of the dbv; they consist of the Commissions for Libraries and Schools, Services, Acquisitions and Collection Development, Intercultural Library Work, Libraries for Children and Young People, and Management and Law. In addition, there are seven working groups in Section 4 (General Academic Libraries) and one in Section 8 (Works Libraries, Hospital Patients’ Libraries and Prison Libraries).

Since 1987 the dbv has honoured journalists in all branches of the media who reflect a modern image of libraries, their current work and their development in their reporting in the form of the annual German Libraries’ Award for Journalism (*Publizistenpreis der deutschen Bibliotheken*). The Award was initiated by the former dbv Chairman Helmut Sontag, who held the position from 1983 to 1986. Since 2010 the call for nominations has been issued jointly by the dbv and the publishers *Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft* (WBG) and has been endowed with 5,000 Euros, of which each organization contributes one half.

In the year 2000 the dbv was able to present its award for the “Library of the Year” (*Bibliothek des Jahres*) for the first time, thanks to financial support from the Ebelin and Gerd

Bucerius Foundation (*Zeit-Stiftung Ebelin und Gerd Bucerius*) of the weekly newspaper *Die Zeit*. The National Library Prize, endowed with 30,000 Euros and the only nationwide award of its kind, is given for outstanding and exemplary library work in all sectors and is intended to motivate libraries to strive for quality, creativity, and innovation. The recipient library is selected by an independent jury with members drawn from – among others – the Federal Government, the Standing Conference of Cultural Ministers, the German Association of Towns and Cities (*Deutscher Städtetag*), the Zeit Foundation (*Zeit-Stiftung*) and the dbv. The prize is awarded on October 24, “Library Day”.

Since 2008 this day has also marked the beginning of a national library action week under the slogan “Meeting Point Library” (*Treffpunkt Bibliothek*). Events in several thousand locations are leveraged to enhance library presence in the national media. Celebrities are engaged as role models and the importance of libraries has been underlined since 2010 in the annual Report on Libraries in Germany.



#### *Library Expertise Network (knb) of the dbv*

The Library Expertise Network (*Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken – KNB*), established by the KMK in 2004 and funded by the federal states, takes advantage of its decentralized structure to exercise a number of essential functions. The dbv has adapted its main structure to accommodate the fields international cooperation, library portal, and the library index BIX as well as to coordinate the network as a whole. Various institutions have taken responsibility for the following three additional operations: The German Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik – DBS*) are serviced by the University Library Centre NRW in Cologne, whilst the European consultancy service is hosted by the State Library in Berlin. Finally, the DIN Institute and the German National Library have been assigned the task of

representing Germany on international standards councils in the form of the Libraries and Documentation Standards Committee (*Normenausschuss Bibliotheks- und Dokumentationswesen – NABD*). In cooperation with the HBZ, the journal B.I.T Online and infas, the dbv took on responsibility for the coordination and organization of the nationwide annual benchmarking system Library Index (*Bibliotheksindex – BIX*) for around 250 participating public and academic libraries from the Bertelsmann Foundation in 2006. Since 2006 the library gateway *Bibliotheksportal*, designed for professional librarians, journalists and politicians, has also assumed the function of central point of contact for those requiring current information on the German library system as a whole. The dbv is responsible for the knb governing council, consisting of representatives from various library-related institutions.



#### **Association of Information and Library Professionals (Berufsverband Information Bibliothek e.V. – BIB)**

The Association of Information and Library Professionals (BIB) was formed in the year 2000 following the amalgamation of two formerly separate associations, the Association of Librarians and Library Assistants (*Verein der Bibliothekare und Assistenten e.V. – VBA*), and the Association of Certified Librarians in Academic and Research Libraries (*Verein der Diplom-Bibliothekare an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken e.V. – VdDB*, founded in 1948). The VBA was itself formed as a result of a merger in 1997, in this case between the Association of Librarians in Public Libraries (*Verein der Bibliothekare an Öffentlichen Bibliotheken e.V. – VBB*), founded in 1949) and the National Association of Library Assistants and Other Staff in Libraries (*Bundesverein der Bibliotheksassistent/innen und Assistenten und anderer Mitarbeiter/innen an Bibliotheken e.V. – BBA*, founded in 1987).

Today, the BIB comprises approximately 6,300 members and is thus the larger of the two associations for professional librarians. Although it does not see itself as a trade union organization, its focus is nevertheless primarily on the professional representation of its members' interests, with particular emphasis being placed on the improvement, modernization, and standardization of librarianship training, the forging and implementation of a modern professional image, negotiation of fair rates of pay for trainees and appropriate pay-scale grouping for practising librarians, and staff qualification through targeted continuing education measures. The professional association makes a significant contribution to the improvement of staff qualification through its many training courses, mainly organized by the 15 regional groups. Since 2006 the BIB has maintained a training database (DAPS) which lists training and work experience institutions alongside universities and vocational training institutions offering librarianship programmes. The database targets professionals at entry level, job seekers, potential and current students, trainees and training libraries offering work experience programmes.

Notable areas of activity typically concern planning and structural issues relating to the German library system, the establishment of national and international relations, management topics, and – together with the VDB – the planning and execution of the German Library Congress (*Deutscher Bibliothekartag*), second in size only to the German Library Congress. The conference papers of past years are available online on the document server BIB-OPUS. The BIB operates at national and European level and beyond, cooperating closely with non-German and international organizations and maintaining international links (BII, EBLIDA, IFLA) and cooperative agreements with professional associations in Italy, Austria and Switzerland via the conference series "The Learning Library". The Association is able to offer support for members looking for internships abroad, particularly in the USA.

The National Executive Committee (*Bundesvorstand*) of the BIB, with five members, is assisted by an Association Committee (*Vereinsausschuss*), comprising representatives of the

15 state groups (*Landesgruppen*), the National Executive Committee and the six Commissions (Training and Professional Profiles, Library Politics, Salaries and Remuneration, One-Person Libraries, Association Marketing and Communication). A three-quarter majority is required for the approval of important constitutional changes. The main offices of the Association are in Reutlingen. Published checklists on various issues in management and practical aspects of librarianship provide support for practicing librarians. Some important publications of the past few years are:

- The EURO-FAMI 2002 (Der EURO-FAMI 2002). Documentation and conclusions of the conference papers and events organized by the KIFA on the profession of Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services in Germany and abroad. 2003
- Checklists published by the OPL Commission. Already published: 1.2003: Moving your library (*Bibliotheksumzug*) – 31.2010: Teaching Information Literacy Online (*Informationskompetenz online vermitteln*).
- 10 Years of FAMI – a profession breaks free!? A Festschrift (*10 Jahre FaMI – ein Beruf emanzipiert sich!?*). 2009

Every two years, the BIB publishes the Yearbook of Public Libraries (*Jahrbuch der Öffentlichen Bibliotheken*) which serves as an important address book. In addition, the Association has published the professional library journal BuB: Forum Bibliothek und Information since 1949; the current circulation is approximately 9,000.



### Association of German Librarians (Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare e.V. – VDB)

The Association of German Librarians (VDB), founded in 1900, is the association of academic and research librarians at the higher level (*höherer Dienst*) with approximately 1,700 members. Its goals are to encourage contact between academic and research librarians and to represent their professional interests, to help them



exchange and development their professional skills, and to promote academic and research librarianship. It is divided into regional associations (*Landesverbände*) and maintains four Standing Commissions: on professional qualifications, legal issues, subject specialist issues and the Commission for Management and Controlling in cooperation with the BIB

Until the mid-1970's, the VDB was responsible for all national-level institutional librarianship work in Germany. Then the dbv, or more specifically the DBI, took over and the VDB relinquished these functions to become an association of individual professional librarians. The Association attaches particular importance to the qualification of new librarians. It has therefore frequently voiced its opinion on the practical and theoretical training of academic librarians and has published its recommendations.

The internal voice of the Association is the *VDB-Mitteilungen*, published twice a year in print and available on the VDB website. Further announcements are published in the Association's former organ, the Journal of Librarianship and Bibliography (*Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie* – ZfBB). Its most important publication is the biennial Yearbook of German Libraries (*Jahrbuch der deutschen Bibliotheken*), first published in 1902. It is divided into two sections: one with details and statistical data on academic and research libraries, and the second on individuals, hence fulfilling the function of a membership directory.

The VDB has organized the annual Library Congress (*Deutscher Bibliothekartag*) since the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century; it is the most important professional conference and currently alternates with the BID's German Library Congress, held every three years. The theme of the 100<sup>th</sup> Library Congress (*Bibliothekartag*) held in Berlin in 2011 was "Libraries for the future – a future for libraries". Until 2008 the most important papers appeared in special issues of the *ZfBB*, published as a separate series. Since then they have been available on the internet and as separate conference proceedings.



### ekz-Library Service, Reutlingen

The library suppliers *ekz-bibliotheksservice GmbH*, founded in 1947 in Reutlingen, have a unique position among German national library institutions. The ekz is a commercial enterprise constituted as a limited company and targeting libraries in particular. 20 of the 21 partners are public sector regional corporate bodies: Federal states, cities, and counties. They command over a third of the stock and possess exclusive minority voting rights. The ekz currently has a staff of 250 and is also one of the founding members of the BID.

The ekz's contribution to library development is through the sales of specially designed products and services for stock-building, classification, conservation, library equipment, fittings and interior design, and library organization. Although over the past decades the ekz has mainly focused on public libraries in Germany, the last few years have seen a significant change: from its origins as primarily a book and library furniture supplier, the ekz has expanded to become one of Europe's leading library service providers at the onset of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, with a comprehensive range of media supply, library planning and consultancy services. The ekz has adapted successfully to current market trends by developing new services such as event sponsoring, training courses and staff qualification seminars.

The ekz has set itself the goal of offering libraries a one-stop service for all their needs, enabling them to mix and match individual products. The ekz is also making a name for itself as a data supply centre for public libraries with its bibliographic and indexing services. Media in print can be delivered quickly thanks to online ordering, and the cataloguing data can be transferred in machine-readable form to the purchasing library. All products can be viewed on the ekz's website, allowing potential customers to search the product range, submit enquiries and contact ekz staff. The ekz's editorial department participates in the production of the book review

For copyright reasons image is not available

services (*ID-Informationendienste* etc.) within the cooperative agreement (*Lektoratskooperation*) with the German Library Association (*Deutschen Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv*) and the Association of Information and Library Professionals (*Berufsverband Information Bibliothek e.V. – BIB*).

In the last few years, the ekz has equipped not only many public libraries, but also an increasing number of academic and research libraries, among them the *German National Library* in Frankfurt am Main, where the ekz supplied the open access shelving. It has also won a number of European library equipment contracts.

So far only a few local authorities have taken advantage of the ekz's "Full Service" package to set up a jointly funded library with the ekz as a business partner on the basis of a limited liability Library Company (*Bibliotheks-GmbH*). Apart from Schriesheim (Baden-Württemberg), where the model was set up to run for an initial period of eight years, Siegburg (North Rhine-Westphalia), where it ran from 1999 until 2010 and finally the library in Monheim on the Rhine

Among the most important products of the *ekz-bibliotheksservice GmbH* in Reutlingen (Baden-Württemberg) are still their various bookbinding services including laminated binding and cover reinforcement for paperbacks. Following the optimization of their logistics system, the ekz also modernized their fully-automated laminating machine at the end of 2005. It is capable of processing several thousand books a day.

GmbH, there have been no further libraries willing to follow the lead.

The ekz has broken new ground with its e-learning projects, initially developed in cooperation with the Bertelsmann Foundation. Between 2000 and 2007 four online self-teaching courses for library staff were introduced under the name "bibweb". Several thousand librarians have used the four existing courses to gain a certified qualification. They include the e-learning projects "Focus on Patrons: User Orientation in Libraries" (*Focus Kunde: Nutzerorientierung in Bibliotheken*), "Focus on Youth: Library Services for Young People" (*Focus Jugend: Bibliotheksangebote für Jugendliche*) and "Focus on Children: Library Work with the Under-Nines" (*Focus Kind: Bibliotheksarbeit für Kinder bis 8*). The ekz closed this project in 2010 after more than 6,000 participants had taken advantage of the courses; it is now concentrating on the transfer of learning content using video media.

The establishment of ekz branches in Austria and France coupled with the company's participation in the *sbd-bibliotheksservice ag* in Switzerland bear witness to its European commitment. The purchase of the RFID specialists EasyCheck GmbH in Göppingen, the transport packaging company NORIS GmbH in Nuremberg and the licensing service provider DiViBib GmbH were further steps along the road to expansion. The subsidiary DiViBib, founded in 2005 and with its sales and marketing activities based since 2011 in Reutlingen, has been able to move the public library business model forward into the digital world with its product „ONLEIHE“. Around 300 public libraries, either on an individual or cooperative basis, now offer online access to media such as e-books, e-papers, e-audio files and e-videos, which users can check out via the internet. In the field of library technology,

the ekz and EasyCheck have offered libraries all-in-one RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) self-service issue and anti-theft security solutions since 2006.

## | BertelsmannStiftung

### The Bertelsmann Foundation, Gütersloh

The Bertelsmann Foundation was founded in 1977 by Reinhard Mohn. Its declared aims are to help citizens to realize their personal potential and to foster continuing social development by promoting the necessary structural framework. The Foundation focuses its projects and other measures primarily on areas such as the architecture of the state education system or health care. Decision makers in politics and administration, business and society well beyond the borders of the Federal Republic of Germany respect the Foundation as a practice-oriented "workshop for reform" and a catalyst of state and administrative modernization. Its driving principles are practice orientation, customer service, innovation, sustainability, partnership and evaluation.

The Bertelsmann Foundation supported public libraries from the outset and cooperated with them in developing and testing new solutions for the social challenges of the future. However, in 2007 the Foundation withdrew from the public library sector and has since been active solely in an advisory function. It had always placed particular emphasis on the practical testing of cooperative projects with partners in Germany and other countries. Such international networks enabled the exchange and development of inno-

vative methods, new findings, and practical experience from the leading libraries of the world, incorporating strategies and solutions from fields outside librarianship and encouraging the exercise of business acumen in library thinking.

In the meantime, participating libraries have been able to provide on-going support for many projects initiated by the Foundation. Topics have included the prioritization of customer orientation, modern presentation techniques for library collections, the systematic promotion of reading skills, education partnerships with schools, and strategies for efficient library management and organization. To help library personnel gain further qualifications, the Bertelsmann Foundation cooperated with the *ekz Bibliotheksservice GmbH* to develop the online training programme called "bibweb – Internet training for libraries"; its learning modules enjoyed several years of considerable success. The project "BIX – The Library Index", a ranking list of library operational data intended to help public and academic libraries evaluate their own performance and provide them with input for managerial decision-making to improve efficiency, has received joint support from the Library Expertise Network (knb), the HBZ, BIT-Online, INFAS, the University of Applied Media Sciences and the Bertelsmann Foundation since 2007.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *City Library of Gütersloh* (Stadtbibliothek Gütersloh) (North Rhine-Westphalia) was built in 1983 with the financial support of the Bertelsmann Foundation and was the first public library to be constituted on the basis of a limited liability company; the city of Gütersloh holds 51% of the shares. 110,000 media occupy an area of approximately 2,500 m<sup>2</sup>. Located in the centre of the three-storey building and directly behind the circulation desk is the library café, inviting readers to drop in for refreshments.

Particularly worthy of mention is the Foundation's decision to prepare a strategy statement of major library political significance on the future development of libraries in Germany. The fruit of the project, which ran from 2002 until 2005 in cooperation with the BID, was the report "Library 2007" (*Bibliothek 2007*), which addressed a range of demands to the political decision-makers, who however chose to ignore them. A possible reason for this may have been the federalism reform of 2006/07, as a consequence of which the Federal Government withdrew its support for library funding. However, one of the strategy paper's main requirements – the establishment of a Library Development Agency "*Bibliotheksentwicklungsagentur – BEA*" – did at least find its way into the final report of the Parliamentary Committee of Inquiry "Culture in Germany" in 2007.



### The Goethe Institute e.V., Munich

The *Goethe Institute e.V.* (GI) engages in activities in international cultural and educational relations on behalf of the German government. Its three main objectives are: to facilitate international cultural cooperation, to promote

the German language abroad, and to convey a broad-based image of Germany by disseminating information on German cultural, social and political life. The Goethe Institute, which has its headquarters in Munich (and an office in the capital Berlin), is not a state institution, but a society subsidized by the Foreign Office. The Institute was founded in 1951 and following a merger with Inter Nationes (founded in 1952) in 2001 is the largest German cultural and educational institution in the world with a staff of some 2,800. In 2010 the Goethe Institute had an annual budget of 334 million euros at its disposal, of which around 225 million euros were funded by the Foreign Office; the remaining over 112 million euros were raised by the Institute itself through its language courses and examinations in Germany and abroad, including around 50 million euros in Germany alone.

Today there are 149 cultural institutes and 11 affiliate offices in 93 countries offering cultural programmes and language courses ("Start Deutsch"), helping teachers, universities and official bodies to promote the German language, offering around 1,700 bursaries to teachers of the German language and providing current information about Germany in 57 "German Reading Rooms". In Germany itself, 13 Goethe Institutes offer language courses using the latest teaching methods, with more than 23,000 participants every year. International cultural journals, books, information material on Germany, cinema and documentary films, and a wide range of online resources are available to interested users worldwide. The visitors' programme enables 1,300 foreign opinion-makers from the press, media, and culture to visit Germany every year to update their knowledge.

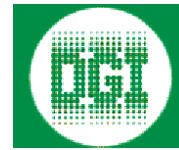
In the past few years the Goethe Institute has increased its activities in the field of information and library work with the objective of

An example of one of the over 90 libraries and information centres maintained by the *Goethe Institute* is the Library in the Indonesian capital Jakarta. Alongside current print and audio-visual media in German and translation the Library also provides work desks with internet access. The holdings of all overseas Goethe Institute libraries are indexed in a central online catalogue, provided a catalogue entry in the database of the South-western Library Network is available.



encouraging an international professional dialogue on the various concepts, methods, and applications of information and knowledge management, of library organization, and training and continuing education. The most important areas of the Institute's information and library work are:

- *Library cooperation, book review services and holdings location directories:* To encourage professional communication in the publishing, media and libraries sector, the Institute organizes professional conferences, workshops, study trips, training and continuing education events etc. in 93 library and information centres in conjunction with institutions in the host countries. The Institute headquarters in Munich provide individual libraries and information centres with a review service including recommended titles and an order and supply function. Holdings are searchable online and can be filtered by institution and state.
- *Literature and translation sponsorship:* The cultural institutes abroad promote German-language literature and finance translations, working closely with the press, publishers, book trade, and libraries in the host countries.
- *Qualified information and advisory service:* Fundamental to the international work of the Goethe Institute is the provision of information on trends, events and publications, and the development of multimedia services on particular aspects of German culture and current events for selected target groups.
- *Information Management:* The Goethe Institute provides a wide range of up-to-date, high-quality media and effective and reliable services tailored to local needs, not only through the libraries and information centres in the Institutes themselves but also in cooperation with numerous partner libraries abroad, for example in more than 77 "German Reading Rooms", "Dialog Points" and learning and information centres. Most of these are integrated into existing well-established library organizations, i.e. the "host library" provides space, its own infrastructure and German speaking library staff while the Goethe Institute provides a basic selection of appropriate media, updated annually, together with the necessary equipment and staff training.



### The German Society for Information Science and Information Practice (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informationswissenschaft und Informationspraxis e.V. – DGI)

The German Association for Information Science and Information Practice (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informationswissenschaft und Informationspraxis e.V. – DGI*), founded in 1948 as the German Association for Documentation (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Dokumentation*), is an association of German information specialists. The DGI is an academic and professional learned society for the advancement of research, teaching and practice in the area of information and documentation, with its main office in Frankfurt am Main. Its aim is to represent the interests of information professionals within the workplace, society as a whole and the field of information politics and the information industry in particular. It is dedicated to furthering awareness of the scope of information services and new perspectives of knowledge management by disseminating new concepts, methods and instruments. It is currently active as trustee and facilitator in the field of information literacy, which it identifies as a key skill in the modern information society and as part of the life-long learning process. The Association's work involves the development of theoretical and practical operational methods, cooperation with national and international institutions, and the advancement of new technological applications, including related legal issues.

The Association's professional journal is *Information – Wissenschaft und Praxis* (Information – Science and Practice). The DGI works together with the Association of Computer Science (*Gesellschaft für Informatik – GI*), the German University Association for Information Science (*Hochschulverband Informationswissenschaft – HI*), the Initiative Scholarship (*IuK-Initiative Wis-*

senschaft – IuK), the Frankfurt Book Fair, the Special Libraries Association (SLA), and the *European Council of Information Associations – ECIA*.

The DGI annual conventions (formerly the German Documentalist Conferences – *Deutsche Dokumentartage*), and the DGI conferences launched in 2010, the traditional Oberhof Colloquium and the DGI Praxis Conferences re-introduced in 2011 all illustrate the immense breadth and variety of professional activities. They cover issues such as technical developments, management issues, and present and potential markets in information and documentation. In the year 2000 the DGI and BDB joined forces for the first time to co-host the congress as the 90<sup>th</sup> Library Congress and the 52<sup>nd</sup> Documentalist Conference in Leipzig on the theme “Information and the Public.” This Congress made very clear how the goals and objectives of both associations had converged over time, so that it was hardly surprising that the DGI should become a member of the newly-established umbrella organization BID in 2004. The Leipzig Congresses, held every three years since then, thus offer librarians and documentalists alike an excellent platform for constructive cooperation and the exchange of know-how.



### International Cooperation

Imperative for the continuing positive development of librarianship in Germany is the regular transfer of knowledge and close cooperation with partners here and abroad from all areas of library and information work. International cooperation has assumed an increasingly important role against a background of globalization, worldwide networking, cross-border legislative regulation and the work of the associations. In the paper “Towards the global knowledge society” (*Auf dem Weg zur globalen Wissensgesellschaft*), published in 2005 and updated in 2008, the BID, as coordinating body, described

the goals, focus and organizational structure of its international activities. The umbrella organization lies at the centre of a network of different associations, councils, libraries and issues. The 2003 IFLA Conference in Berlin has encouraged German librarianship to increase its activities considerably. The main burden is borne by the BI-International, a standing committee responsible for the international exchange activities of the BID, together with the Goethe Institute, the Library Expertise Network/International Section of the dbv and the IFLA National Committee.

As a result of political developments in Europe, there has since the end of the 20<sup>th</sup> century been a shift of expertise from the German institutions to those European groups of particular relevance for German librarianship. At the World Summit on the Information Society (WSIS), held in 2003 in Geneva and 2005 in Tunis, the role of libraries was discussed. The presence of IFLA representatives at the congresses of the Internet Governance Forum (IGF) ensures the representation of library interests.

Around 70 German library institutions and associations are members of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), the international umbrella organization for libraries, founded in 1927 in Glasgow. Elected German delegates sit in nearly all of the IFLA specialist subgroups, sections and core activities circles. German librarians are regularly elected to sit on IFLA’s top board, the Governing Board. IFLA’s headquarters are located in The Hague; the annual conference is staged at various venues all over the world. From 2007–2009 Claudia Lux held office as the third German president, succeeding Gustav Hoffmann (1958–1963) and Hans-Peter Geh (1985–1991).

The IFLA National Committee was formed in 1974 to coordinate German participation in the organization; its headquarters are located in the International Cooperation department of the knb within the dbv in Berlin. Among its participants are the member associations of the BID, the German Association of Special Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Spezialbibliotheken – ASpB*), the German National Library, the State Libraries in Berlin and Munich, the Saxonian State Library – State and University Library of

Dresden (*Sächsische Landesbibliothek – Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Dresden*), and the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft – DFG*). The DFG subsidizes the IFLA membership of these associations and the German Academic Exchange Service (*Deutscher Akademischer Austauschdienst – DAAD*) provides financial support enabling academic librarians to attend the IFLA conferences. The IFLA National Committee invites participation in its annual meetings, which it combines with public discussion events; it also organizes sessions relating to IFLA issues at the Library Congresses.

At European level, the German library associations are represented by the *European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations – EBLIDA*, a pressure group founded in 1992 in the Hague to represent the interests of the library and information services lobby before the European Parliament, the European Commission and the Council of Europe. EBLIDA members include representatives of the professional associations of all European countries. Five groups of experts are responsible for drafting

reports and policy statements on questions of copyright and other legislative areas, digitization, and culture and the information society. In May 2009 EBLIDA and NAPLE jointly issued the “Vienna Declaration”, outlining the role and potential capabilities of libraries within the European knowledge society. The Declaration addressed four recommendations to the European Commission: The publication of a White Book on public libraries in the knowledge society, the establishment of a European Knowledge Centre for public libraries, funding for European projects dedicated to the further development of libraries and their infrastructure, and the introduction of copyright legislation, which, while respecting the rights of the copyright owners, would nevertheless allow for solutions for library use without hindering the further development of the knowledge society.

NAPLE (*National Authorities on Public Libraries in Europe*) was founded in 2002 by a group of national European library administration organizations. It has set itself the goal of promoting the strategic development of the political and administrative strata of public libraries in Eu-

For copyright reasons image is not available

The new *Philology Library of the Free University of Berlin*, inaugurated in 2005, was designed by the British architect Sir Norman Foster, known for his spectacular buildings. The building was nicknamed “The Berlin Brain” on account of both its contents and its design. In 2006 it was awarded the renowned Berlin Prize for Architecture, only awarded every two years. The oval, balloon-shaped building houses eleven institute and seminar libraries which had previously suffered from inadequate accommodation and staffing. The open access area has a capacity of 800,000 volumes and has 650 work-spaces for library users.

## PROFESSIONS AND ASSOCIATIONS

rope. Joint international library conferences have been an integral part of NAPLE and EBLIDA's members' meetings since 2009; EBLIDA has also organized joint conferences or working groups with LIBER.

The international coalition of academic and research libraries LIBER (*Ligue des Bibliothèques européennes de recherche = League of European Research Libraries*) was formed under the aegis of the Council of Europe in 1971 and has taken the constitutional form of a foundation since 2009. Its members include a number of German state, regional and university libraries. LIBER has a membership of over 400 academic, national and university libraries in 45 countries. LIBER exists to help academic and research libraries in Europe build a functioning network across national borders to ensure the preservation of the European cultural heritage, improve access to the holdings of European libraries and develop more efficient European information services.

The Conference of European National Librarians (CENL) is an independent association comprising the Directors of the European National Libraries and is constitutionally a foundation. Its purpose is to promote cooperation between the European national libraries, focusing on collection preservation, multilingual authority files in national libraries, long-term archiving of

electronic publications and digitization. CENL laid the foundation for the *Europeana* with the "European Digital Library". Europeana went online in 2008, with the goal of making the European cultural and scholarly heritage available to the public. The project receives partial funding from the European Commission and is a foundation of the Dutch National Library.

German libraries draw increasingly on EU funding programmes to advance their digitization projects, expand the scope of their services and safeguard the cultural diversity of their member countries and regions as defined by the "UNESCO Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions". Among the EU support programmes with relevance for libraries and a time-span extending to 2013 are the 7<sup>th</sup> EU Framework Programme for Research and Technological Development, the CULTURE framework programme, and the educational programme "Lifelong Learning" with its subordinate programmes "Comenius" (school education), "Erasmus" (higher education), "Leonardo da Vinci" (vocational education) and "Grundvig" (adult education). More information on these and other EU programmes can be found on the library gateway (*Bibliotheksporta*) of the knb.



## 5 COOPERATION BETWEEN GERMAN LIBRARIES

### Cooperation within Local, Regional and National Services

Intensive and successful cooperation within the German library system is by no means a recent phenomenon. Its roots go back to Prussia at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century and this tradition was later to be continued in the German Empire. The economic problems caused by First World War and the immense losses wreaked by the Second had already led librarians to seek new areas of cooperative effort. However, it was not until the expansion of the educational sector during the 1960's and the vast increase in demands for literature provision and information services that any attempt was made to introduce a measure of rational planning into the development of the German library system. The introduction of data processing and the expansion of electronic networks gave new impetus to the idea of cooperation and made it clear that the age of the Digital Library was dawning.

### The Principles of Library Cooperation

In 1964 the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*), the most highly respected among the advisory bodies in academic research and technology, published its "Recommendations for the Development of Academic and Research Libraries" (*Empfehlungen zum Ausbau der wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken*). These encompassed not only fundamental ideas on the future structure of the academic library system in the contemporary Federal Republic, but also concrete recommendations for 82 individual libraries together with budgeting models for university libraries. Furthermore, the recommendations set the ball rolling on important projects such as the establishment of textbook

In 1992 the Lower Saxony State and University Library of Göttingen (*Niedersächsische Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Göttingen*) moved into a modern building (architect: Gerber and Partner), enabling 1.5 million of its 4.2 million volumes to be placed on open access. The Library performs several national functions, including the administration of around 20 special subject collections, and is advancing confidently along the road towards the Digital Library. In 2002 it was selected as "Library of the Year" by the DBV for its outstanding achievements.

For copyright reasons image is not available

For copyright reasons image is not available

collections and the creation of inner-university union catalogues. They also encouraged the development both of overall planning concepts and of individual measures, such as models for the assessment of budget, staff and space requirements.

Lacking a central agency responsible for the German library system in its entirety, the German Library Conference (*Deutsche Bibliothekskonferenz*), at that time the top-level organization in academic and public libraries, acted on its own initiative and produced the structural development plan "Library Plan '73" (*Bibliotheksplan '73*). As its subtitle indicates, the plan was intended as an "outline plan for the development of a comprehensive library network in the Federal Republic of Germany." It assumed that the "continually increasing demands made on all areas of general education, vocational training, teaching, and research" could only be met "if all forms of literature, which will continue to form the basis for learning in the future, are made available together with other information sources to everyone, everywhere". The only way of achieving this goal, it was concluded, was through the unification of the library system and the cooperative efforts of all the libraries involved. The Library Plan '73 was drawn up after consultation with the German Association of Towns and Cities (*Deutscher Städtetag*).

The formal basis of interlibrary cooperation is still in principle the position paper "Libraries '93" (*Bibliotheken '93*), compiled by librarians from all over Germany and published by

While the Unter den Linden Building of the *Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage* houses the Historical Research Library with literature published up until the turn of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, the building at Potsdamer Platz accommodates the Lending and Reference Library for literature published since then. The General Reading Room, providing a reference collection of 150,000 volumes spread over four floors and 800 work desks, is complemented by four additional subject specialist reading rooms: The Manuscript, Eastern European, Cartography, and Oriental and East Asian Reading Rooms. The library users are primarily students.

the Federation of German Library Associations (*Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände*) in 1993. It includes all types of libraries and has at last succeeded in breaking down the traditional notional barriers between the two opposing public and academic library poles. As in the previous plan, *Bibliotheken '73*, each type and size of library is assigned its individual place in the literature provision network, this position defining the library's aims, which in their turn determine the scope of the resources required. Functions of a global nature are best fulfilled by central agencies or organized on a cooperative interlibrary basis.

The necessity for joint action has been rendered more urgent by the decentralized structure of the German library system, the wide variety of funding bodies, the political and administrative framework of the federal state, the absence of a national planning and management authority, and many other factors. *Cooperation* has become a constitutional feature of the German library system, as can be demonstrated by the large number of collaborative projects and the many interlibrary working groups and associations. This points to the fact that the unusual structure of the German library system is by no means necessarily a disadvantage, but can, on the contrary, deliver impressive results if responsibilities are shared and cooperation properly planned. Nevertheless, cooperation is no compensation for deficient funding and no alternative to the establishment of central coordinating bodies.

There are two kinds of functions particularly suited to cooperative methods: those of national significance, for which a division of labour is dic-

For copyright reasons image is not available

The new building of the Baden Regional Library (*Badische Landesbibliothek*) in Karlsruhe (Baden-Württemberg, architect: Oswald Mathias Ungers), radiates severity and assertive timelessness. The geometric centre of the building is the main reading room, featuring a dome in the style of 19<sup>th</sup> century reading rooms. The Baden Regional Library cooperates with other academic libraries in the region within the framework of EUCOR (European Confederation of the Universities of the Upper Rhine).

## Cooperation in Market Scanning and Acquisitions

Academic libraries have for many decades worked closely together in the field of acquisitions. There have also been isolated cases of cooperative acquisition projects in the public library sector too; for example, the large city libraries of North Rhine-Westphalia have agreed among themselves on the allocation of special acquisition responsibility for particular subject areas, with federal state funding. The projects described below are concerned with specific collection development. However, an increasing proportion of acquisition funds is being used for the purchase of usage rights. Like their counterparts abroad, German libraries have formed consortia for the cooperative licensing of electronic media. Particularly in the case of high-priced digital products, consortia agreements enable libraries to increase the number of titles on offer without overextending their acquisitions budgets.

tated by the sheer scope of their aims and objectives, and those of a repetitive nature, affecting a large number of libraries and thus lending themselves to cooperative rationalization. There are, therefore, opportunities for cooperation at local, regional or national level, or again in a European or international dimension. Many German libraries are engaged on cross-border projects and associative schemes, for example in the Baltic countries (*Bibliotheca Baltica*), the Alpine region (*ARGE Alp*), the Upper Rhine area (*EUCOR* and *BIBLIO 2*) or in the *EUREGIO* Maas-Rhine area. They are involved in the work of international organizations and committees, including membership of IFLA. German libraries also participate in the various initiatives and development programmes of the European Union and in the activities of UNESCO. In the following examples, however, the emphasis is on outstanding cooperative programmes of national significance in the fields of acquisitions, cataloguing and user services.

## The German Research Foundation, the Special Subject Field Collection-building Programme and the Virtual Subject Libraries

The German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG) is the central autonomous body appointed to promote research in universities and publicly funded research institutions in Germany. It serves all academic disciplines by financing research projects and encouraging collaboration among researchers. The DFG was founded in 1949 to carry on the tradition initiated by the Emergency Council of German Science (*Notgemeinschaft der Deutschen Wissenschaft*) in 1920. For this purpose the DFG

For copyright reasons image is not available

The new building, opened in 2002 (design: Ortner and Ortner) enabled the *Saxonian Regional Library* to unite all its previously scattered separate departments (special collections, textbook collection, German Photographic Library) under one roof. Readers have a choice of 900 work-spaces, 200 of which are in the spacious Reading Room. In 1993, the Saxonian State Library took over responsibility for the DFG special subject field of contemporary art of the post-war era.

For copyright reasons image is not available

receives grants from the central *Bund* and the regional *Länder*, and to a small extent from private source. The DFG group "Academic Library Provision and Information Systems" (*Wissenschaftliche Literaturversorgungs- und Informationssysteme – LIS*) promotes the development of effective information services and innovative infrastructure systems attuned to the needs of researchers in state-funded academic institutions. The funding programmes, with around 36.5 million euros at their disposal, concentrate on realizing measures at national level in the following areas: The acquisition and digitization of manuscripts, printed literature and source material and the networking of these resources through the Decentralized Digital Research Library (*Verteilte Digitale Forschungsbibliothek*) together with the establishment of differentiated gateways for each genre; electronic publications (development and implementation of innovative and standardized procedures in digital academic communication, electronic publishing and long-term archiving of digital documents), information management (measures designed to improve both technical and organizational access to information).

National literature provision forms the core of the DFG's library support programme and involves at the present three types of libraries: universal libraries with special subject collection areas, special research libraries, and the Central Subject Libraries. Building on the 19<sup>th</sup> century model, the DFG developed a Special Subject Field Collection Programme (*Sondersammelgebietsplan*) in 1949 for the academic library system. The Programme was drawn up to ensure that even during the difficult years of reconstruction following the Second World War at least one copy of every essential foreign work of research literature would be available in Germany. Over time the programme developed into a fully-fledged national literature provision system serving the interests of the scientific and research community.

Twenty-seven of Germany's most efficient state and university libraries together with over 30 special libraries participate in a clearly-defined system of around 100 subject or regionally-oriented special acquisition fields. Following reunification, the former exclusively West Ger-

man system was expanded; new subject areas were created and existing fields reallocated to include libraries in the former East German region. The task of the participating libraries is to build special subject collections in their allocated fields on a systematic basis and to make these available nationwide with the help of DFG funding. The subject field definitions are broad and include all forms of information media, including digital information media. The scope extends to non-German language periodicals, monographs and microforms published after 1950 and also encompasses non-German digital publications in both physical and online form.

The DFG has supported the funding of national licences for current periodicals, journals archives, databases and document collections for the Special Subject Fields since 2004, with the objective of providing researchers, students and others with scholarly interests with free access to databases, digital document collections and electronic periodicals. Nationwide access to the resources is offered not only by all German university and regional libraries but also some non-university institutions. At present eight institutions have signed licensing agreements with publishers, professional associations and other information suppliers and offer both libraries and individuals access on the basis of the agreed terms. In future the Alliance Licence programme will enable regional consortia to play a more active role in product selection.

To increase the system's efficiency, subject area libraries are expected to include digital publications in their acquisitions profile, as they have been doing since 2004 with the purchase of national licences. Since the objective of the Special Subject Field Collection Programme is to make provision for future research literature requirements, as well as to consider present needs, a

solution will have to be found to the problem of long-term availability of digital material.

Information on the DFG Special Subject Fields and the libraries to which they have been assigned, and on the range of Virtual Subject Libraries already established, can be obtained from the web-based information system *Webis* – Special Subject Field Acquisition in German Libraries, which is also a source of information on the idea of a decentralized digital research library. While the demands of the main disciplines medicine, science and technology, and economics are met by the Central Subject Libraries, the remaining subject areas are divided among a large number of universal and special libraries. These are responsible either for individual subject fields, such as botany, forestry, psychology and theology, or for linguistic, cultural or geographical regions, such as Southern Africa, South Asia and Oceania or the languages of the Indian and Inuit peoples.

The literature acquired under the national literature provision programme is catalogued, subject-indexed and recorded in the regional and national union catalogues. In addition, it may be disseminated to interested researchers in the form of special conventional or electronic publications, such as new acquisitions lists or periodical contents indexes. Although this literature was formerly made available through the German interlibrary loan service, all subject field libraries, along with the Central Subject Libraries, now offer document delivery via the *subito* service. The digitization of the special subject area collections will enjoy top priority status in the future and is

For copyright reasons image is not available

The historical Reading Room of *Tübingen University Library* in Baden-Württemberg, built in 1912 (architect: Paul Bonatz) is graced by a large mural depicting the struggle between the present and the wisdom of the past. Tübingen University Library, founded in 1477, is part of a two-tier library system and is responsible for three broad subject areas from the DFG's Special Subject Fields Collection Programm including theology.

another method of making these holdings more easily available.

Since 1998, the further development of the Special Subject Fields Collection Libraries (*Sammlungsschwerpunktbibliotheken*) has been continued with the financial support of the DFG, although it has not been possible to cover all subjects, notable gaps being computer science and meteorology. The Virtual Subject Libraries provide access to printed materials and high-quality internet sources pertaining to their individual subject areas. The umbrella portal *Vascoda* – Internet Gateway for Academic Information, uniting the Virtual Subject Libraries with the information networks funded by the Federal Ministry of Education and Research (*Bundesministerium für Bildung und Forschung* – BMBF) enables interdisciplinary searching. *Vascoda* has been registered as a non-profit making organization since 2005, with a membership of over 40 libraries, specialist information institutions and academic institutions. In future, however, *Vascoda* will limit its activities to the coordination, strategic support and marketing for the networking of the participating subject gateways and the transfer of knowledge between them. The gateway will no longer be maintained in its present form. The hosts of several virtual subject libraries are involved in the project *Academic Linkshare* (ALS), dedicated to the cooperative indexing of internet resources of relevance to researchers.

### The Collection of German Imprints (*Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*)

While the large national libraries of other countries house comprehensive collections of their own national literature, Germany first established a central archive of printed German culture with the founding of the *Deutsche Bücherei* in 1912. The member libraries of the Working Group on the Collection of German Imprints (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*), set up in 1989 and generously supported with 12.5 million euros for the first ten years by the Volkswagen Foundation (*Volkswagen-Stiftung*), have set themselves the task of systematically completing the fragmentary records of materials

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Duke August Library (*Herzog August Bibliothek*) in Wolfenbüttel (Lower Saxony) was founded in 1572 by Duke August, and by the 17<sup>th</sup> century was one of the largest collections of literature in Europe. Today it is a centre for the research and study of European cultural history. The core collection, containing about 135,000 titles, is housed in the museum-like *Augusteerhalle* of the *Bibliotheca Augusta* (built between 1884 and 1887), the central building of the Wolfenbüttel library complex.

published in German-speaking countries up until 1912. From publication year 1913 onwards, the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) has been able to continue the Collection of German Imprints on the basis of its legal deposit copies. It has thus been possible to create an increasingly complete virtual national library.

Acquisition responsibilities have been divided among the participating libraries on a chronological basis. The individual segments have been allocated to those libraries already possessing substantial holdings from the period in question. The six member libraries of the Working Group are responsible for the following periods:

1450–1600:	Bavarian State Library, Munich
1601–1700:	Duke August Library, Wolfenbüttel

1701–1800:	Lower Saxony State and University Library of Göttingen
1801–1870:	Johann Christian Senckenberg University Library in Frankfurt am Main
1871–1912:	State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage
1913 to present:	German National Library, Frankfurt am Main and Leipzig

Each of the member libraries acquires for its allocated period all printed material published in German-speaking countries and all material in the German language, regardless of where it was published. Priority is given to the purchase of imprints not yet available in a freely accessible German library. All printed materials acquired through the project are registered in the national catalogue databases and can thus be searched worldwide on the internet. In many cases, the historical imprints are in need of special preservation measures; in addition, the question of filming or digitalizing a document may also have to be considered.

Even though around 100,000 works have been acquired in their original print form and more than 40,000 on microfilm, the development of this *virtual national library* still has a long way to go. It is impossible to say how many books have been published in Germany since the invention of letter-press printing. Estimates have indicated that several more decades of collection at the present level will be necessary, making the *Sammlung Deutscher Drucke* a project of monumental dimensions.

### Book Review Cooperation in Public Libraries (Lektoratskooperation)

The *Lektoratskooperation* (LK), an inestimable aid to collection development in public libraries, was initiated in 1976 and aims to reduce duplicate effort in the task of choosing books and audio-visual media. Its main objective is to aid public libraries in evaluating the more than 80,000 new media published every year in Germany and to help them decide which titles to order.

The *Lektoratskooperation* combines the advantages of a decentralized, practice-oriented market evaluation system with the efficiency of a centrally-organized reviewing resource. Participatory bodies are the German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband – dbv*) with around 75 subject specialists (*Lektoren*) in about 60 libraries, the Association of Information and Library Professionals (*Berufsverband Information Bibliothek – BIB*) with around 250 reviewers, and the library supplier *ekz-bibliotheksservice GmbH*, whose review department has adopted an overall coordinating function. The task of the member editors is to critically view and evaluate new non-fiction titles, while the reviewers screen literature for children and young people, fiction and audio and AV media. The ekz review staff are responsible for scanning the market and for the postal distribution of the media to be evaluated together with the subsequent publication of the review texts. Around 22,000 titles are received by the ekz; of these around 14,000 are pre-selected for distribution to the editors and reviewers. Their feedback forms the basis of a number of review services.

Libraries can subscribe to these evaluation services for a fee. The complete, limited, and selected editions of the ekz Information Service (*Informationsdienst – ID*) are published weekly. The “full edition” of the *ID*, containing 14,000 titles annually, is aimed at large and medium-sized city library systems with specialized collections. The *ID* “basic edition” with 14,000 titles annually is for the libraries of medium-sized towns with correspondingly smaller acquisition budgets. The ekz’s parallel monthly publication “BA. Reviews and Annotations” (*BA. Besprechungen und Annotationen*) ceased publication at the end of 2010. The “selected edition” of the *ID* contains 6,000 titles per year. The monthly “*ID 3000*” with around 3,000 individually selected appraisals is targeted at public libraries in small towns and communities of less than 10,000 inhabitants. There is a separate monthly “*Medien-Info*” for non-book media listing 3,000 titles annually. Since 2007 smaller public libraries, often run on a voluntary basis, have been able to subscribe to “*BibTipp*” a twice-yearly list of recommended titles published by the state library agencies and

For copyright reasons image is not available

The large city libraries under Sections 1 and 2 of the German Library Association classification (cities with over 100,000 inhabitants) are especially active participants in the cooperative book evaluation scheme. The *City Library of Würzburg*, extended in 2001, is responsible for the evaluation of the subject area Geography. In 2009 it was one of the first public libraries to introduce the "Onleihe" (online checkout) system, allowing the downloading of digital media for a limited time.

containing around 1,500 book reviews. In addition, standing order offers by subject and on a sliding financial scale enable libraries to use the ekz's central services, an output of the *Lektoratskooperation*, for current collection development at the local level.

Public libraries profit from a subscription to the ekz Information Service in several ways. Firstly, they receive recommendations and references they can use to develop their own collections. Secondly, they can take advantage of the ekz's other services, such as the cataloguing records and subject headings of the German National Library, or the classification notations of the four most frequently used public library classification schemes. Thanks to the increasing deployment of modern information technology, the organizationally and logistically challenging system works remarkable quickly and well, delivering up-to-the-minute reviews.

### Cooperation in Cataloguing and Subject Indexing

Cooperation in the cataloguing sector and the exploitation of central services are only possible

if participating libraries agree on a common set of cataloguing rules. Examples of such rules are the Descriptive Cataloguing Rules (*Regeln für die alphabetische Katalogisierung* – RAK), widely used in German academic and public libraries, and the Subject Cataloguing Rules (*Regeln für die Schlagwortkatalogisierung* – RSWK), used by many research libraries. These rules are further complemented by various authority files, such as the Corporate Body Authority File (*Gemeinsame Körperschaftsdatei* – GKD, with 1.3 million entries), the Name Authority File (*Personennamendatei* – PND, with 3.7 million entries) and the Subject Headings Authority File (*Schlagwortnormdatei* – SWD, with 0.9 million entries). The project Universal Authority File (*Gemeinsame Normdatei* – GND) combines the existing PND, SWD and GKD authority files with the uniform title file of the German Music Archive to form a central universal authority file (GND), eliminating differences in format, the duplication of records and application of multiple sets of rules for descriptive and subject cataloguing. The ultimate goal is the creation of a universal authority file as single reference system for the bibliographical data not only of libraries but of all other users of the authority files, such as archives, museums, projects, and academic and cultural institutions. The GND will be run by the authority file users on a cooperative basis and will be hosted by the DNB. Participants of the GND project are – in addition to the DNB – the regional library networks of all the German-speaking countries and the National Periodicals Database (ZDB). The DNB is responsible for both the overall planning and production of the national authority file and for coordinating the work of the regional library networks. The production of standardized formal rules and the development and maintenance of comprehensive authority files is not only a pre-



requisite for successful library cooperation, it is also an example of it.

Of course, outside services in the field of formal and subject cataloguing can be (and indeed frequently have been) utilized in a conventional environment, but they come into their own when combined with data processing. The German Machine-readable Exchange Format for Libraries (*Maschinelles Austauschformat für Bibliotheken* – MAB), essentially developed by the German National Library in Frankfurt am Main in the 1980s, laid the foundations for the reciprocal use of machine-readable catalogue data.

The German National Library is the leading supplier of bibliographic services, delivering over 100 million current records per year. Catalogue entries for all titles in the various *German National Bibliography* (*Deutsche Nationalbibliographie*) series are generated in compliance with the still current Descriptive Cataloguing Rules for Academic and Research Libraries (*Regeln für die alphabetische Katalogisierung in wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken* – RAK-WB) and can be ordered in conventional or electronic form. Subject terms or headings generated in accordance with the *RSWK* have been included since 1986 in all subject-indexed new title records. In 2006 the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) was introduced as an additional subject cataloguing instrument. At the end of 2001, the Standardization Committee (*Standardisierungsausschuss*), based at what was then *Die Deutsche Bibliothek*, announced its recommendation to relinquish the German MAB data structure in favour of the American MARC standard, and at the same time to replace the German cataloguing rules (RAK) with the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2). In 2007 German libraries began the gradual changeover to the MARC 21 exchange format. The producers of library software are faced with the challenge of adapting their programmes to the new data structure. In the interests of the international standardization of cataloguing rules the Standardization Committee announced its decision to actively participate in the compilation of the new work *Resource Description and Access* (RDA), the successor to AACR2 and designed for international use. Catalogues compiled on the basis of the RDA can make an

important contribution to the development of the “Semantic Web” by linking terms, names and descriptions semantically and thus enabling search engines to do more than merely compare character strings and at the same time paving the way to more intelligent search methods.

### The Regional Network Systems

The idea behind the regional network systems, created in the 1970s, was that libraries should be able to use data generated by other libraries to facilitate the cataloguing of their own new acquisitions. The cooperative exchange of cataloguing records, initially limited to descriptive data, but later extended to include subject indexing, has had a considerable rationalization effect on book processing. In addition, comprehensive record files were created which have proved of inestimable value as search tools in the management of interlibrary lending.

The library networks were originally regionally based, but have developed over the years into institutions spanning the *Länder* borders. Though initially their main objective was the cooperative development of a common catalogue database, the networks have since taken on new responsibilities and expanded their services to become competitors in the information technology market. Examples of the networks' activities are the maintenance of union catalogues as records of older monograph titles held in the region and the later conversion of these catalogues into machine-readable form (retrospective conversion), the planning and management of the IT development within a regional network, support for the operation of local systems, and the implementation of document delivery systems. Further activities include, the development of digital libraries, catalogue enrichment, table of contents services for journals, hosting services for local library publications and archive systems, the maintenance of repositories and the establishment of consortial licencing programmes for commercial databases, full text services and e-books. For example, the HBZ also hosts open access publications (Digital Peer Publishing), compiles the German Library Statistics and maintains the Central Index of Digitized Imprints (*Zen-*



Regional Library Network Systems in Germany, 2011 (Table notes on next page)

*trales Verzeichnis Digitalisierter Drucke – ZVDD*). The BSZ hosts the German Internet Library, supports the online information network *InfoDesk* and provides services for archives and museums through the BAM gateway.

However, their main job remains the maintenance of library computer centres. These centres are responsible for the upkeep of the network's online union catalogues, which the members use as central cataloguing and search tools for the supply of data to their local systems.

Today the vast majority of academic libraries are members of one of the six regional networks; further concentration is expected. The *Länder* have adopted a variety of different technical systems.

Cooperation between the library networks is organized by the Working Association (AGV) with its secretarial headquarters at the German National Library. In spite of this cooperative pool the library networks have not yet managed to exchange their catalogue data or even to set up a national network database. Most networks

(with the exception of the HBZ) have begun to supply their data to the OCLC database WorldCat. Recently the networks have made an effort to improve cooperation and have begun to develop shared data pools, common interfaces and unique identifiers for data records. In 2010 the networks and the DNB began the exchange of the scanned tables of contents, blurb, indexes etc. generated for catalogue enrichment.

The lack of a national union catalogue is compensated for by the "Karlsruhe Virtual Catalogue" (*Karlsruher Virtueller Katalog – KVK*), maintained by the library KIT (formerly the University Library of Karlsruhe). The KVK, established in 1996, links the regional union catalogues independently of their various software platforms to form a virtual union catalogue. The KVK search interface allows parallel searching in just under 50 library and book trade catalogues in addition to the regional network catalogues. The pool includes WorldCat, the union catalogues of Great Britain and France, and the database of the internet booksellers Amazon.

The KVK has become one of the most important search instruments in the Federal Republic and is consulted by over 1.5 million users each month, reportedly retrieving over 500 million titles. Several similar virtual catalogues based on the idea and technology of the KVK have since been realized by the KIT Library for individual regions (e.g. Rhineland-Palatinate or the region around Lake Constance), subject fields (e.g. Middle East and North Africa), geographical literature areas (e.g. *Länder* bibliographies) and media types (e.g. videos).

More widely known is the Digital Library NRW (DigiBib), developed by the University Library Centre in Cologne and open to the participation of any state-owned public library in Germany, Austria and the German-speaking regions of Switzerland and Luxemburg. The DigiBib enables the user to conduct a search simultaneously in a large number of information sources, including over 300 library catalogues, full-text servers, internet search engines and literature databases from all over the world. If the target text is found, the user will be informed whether it is available online, via a document delivery service, in a library or for sale in an online bookshop. If

Network and Headquarters	Software	Regions	Libraries and Holdings
Common Library Network, Göttingen (Gemeinsamer Bibliotheksverbund – GBV) GREEN	OCLC, PICA	Bremen, Hamburg, Mecklenburg-Western Pomerania, Lower Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt, Schleswig-Holstein, Thuringia	430 participating libraries, 37.7 million titles with 77 million locations
Berlin-Brandenburg Cooperative Library Network, Berlin (Kooperativer Bibliotheksverbund – KOBV) YELLOW	ALEPH	Berlin and Brandenburg	250 participating libraries, 12 million titles with 20 million locations, successively integrated into the Bavarian Library network
North Rhine-Westphalian Library Network (Nordrhein-Westfälischer Bibliotheksverbund – NRW-BV), University Library Center of North Rhine-Westphalia, Cologne (Hochschulbibliothekszentrum des Landes NRW – HBZ) DARK RED	ALEPH	North Rhine-Westphalia, Rhineland-Palatinate (excluding Rhinehesse-Palatinate with Mainz and Worms)	900 participating libraries, 17 million titles with 38 million locations
Hesse Library Information System, Frankfurt am Main (Hessisches Bibliotheks-Informationssystem – HeBIS) LIGHT GREEN	OCLC PICA	Hesse with cooperation partner Rhinehesse (in Rhineland Palatinate)	567 participating libraries, 8 million titles with 15 million locations
Southwestern Library Network (Südwestdeutscher Bibliotheksverbund – SWB) Library Service Center Baden-Württemberg, Konstanz (Bibliotheksservice-Zentrum Baden-Württemberg – BSZ) GREY	OCLC PICA	Baden-Württemberg, Saarland, Saxony (Library Network of Saxony)	1,200 participating libraries, 14.5 million with 53 million locations
Bavarian Library Network, BSB Munich (Bibliotheksverbund Bayern – BVB) PINK	ALEPH	Bavaria	110 participating libraries, 15 million titles with 30 million locations

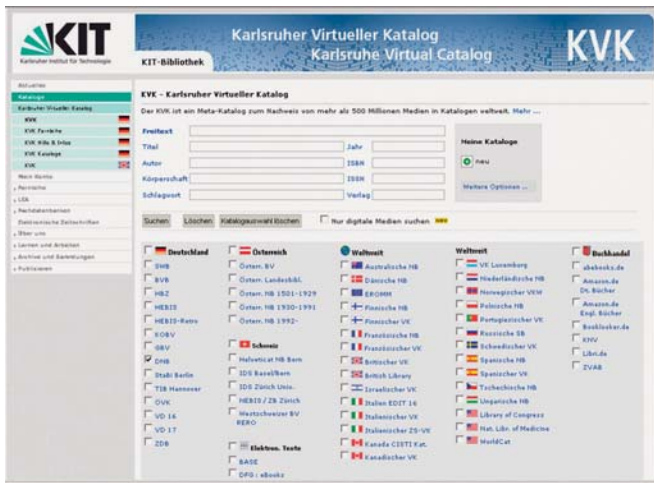
it cannot be retrieved, links will guide the user by subject to online and CD-ROM databases (e.g. dictionaries and subject databases) or to high-quality web sites. Members of the university and registered library users can access free databases and full-text sources plus any others licensed by the library they happen to be in via the “authenticated DigiBib login” from within the internal network of the participating library. Guest users from anywhere in the world can access all free databases and full-text sources via the external login facility. In addition the HBZ’s “Three Nations Catalogue” (*Dreiländerkatalog*) can be used to search the library collections of the entire German-speaking area. At press the

catalogue contains around 31 million entries including data from North Rhine-Palatinate/Rhineland-Palatinate, Bavaria, North and Central Germany, and Austria.

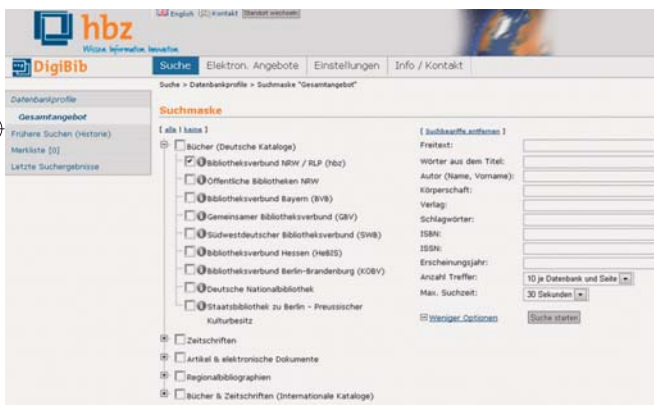
### The National Periodicals Database and the Electronic Periodicals Library

Whereas monograph cataloguing is organized decentrally within the regional library network system, provision was made from the outset for a single countrywide system for periodicals, the National Periodicals Database (*Zeitschriften-datenbank – ZDB*), now able to celebrate forty years of success in the German library landscape.

## COOPERATION BETWEEN GERMAN LIBRARIES



The search interface of the Karlsruhe Virtual Catalogue at <http://www.ubka.uni-karlsruhe.de/kvk.html> is also available in English.



The search interface for the Digital Library at <http://www.digibib.net> offers basic and advanced search options.

When the ZDB was founded with the financial help of the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft – DFG*), the number of participating libraries was small. In the meantime 4,300 institutions are involved in its development and upkeep. Around 170 of the larger libraries, some of them in Austria, catalogue their print and electronic journal titles and location details directly in the database. The ZDB today holds records of over 1.5 million titles, of which over 500,000 are current publications. The editorial office employs data maintenance and standardization to guarantee the quality and consistency of the title records. Owing to the high standard of its bibliographical records, the ZDB has achieved the status of a authority file for the formal cataloguing of periodical titles, an achievement which together with the cooperative nature of its operation has led to an efficient division of labour between the participation libraries.

The ZDB is funded by the State Library in Berlin, while the German National Library is responsible for the systems administration. The SBB is thus not only accountable for the work of the editorial office but for the further development of the ZDB together with its partner, the DNB. All libraries and institutions are welcome to contribute to the ZDB.

Title and holdings details are passed back to the library networks, so that besides being recorded in the central ZDB they are also listed in the regional databases and local online catalogues. The national character of the ZDB means that its data can be used for other purposes, such as the management of German interlibrary lending, the coordination of holdings maintenance measures and collections development in libraries.

The number of electronic journals and newspapers (e-journals, e-papers) has already topped the 100,000 mark and continues to increase. The freely accessible online catalogue integrates seamlessly with the online interlibrary lending system and the document delivery services of the individual regional library networks.

The ZDB and the DNB are engaged on additional joint projects, such as the development of a periodicals platform to contain informa-

tion on licensing and offering journal packages management functionality. Information on such packages can be fed into the ZDB using automatic import and update procedures. A web-based cataloguing client is being developed as an easy way for special libraries and academic institutions to list their holdings. The ZDB is also involved in the planned changeover to the new national cataloguing rules.

The ZDB has combined forces with the Electronic Periodicals Library in Regensburg to offer a joint data service, standardizing the delivery of data from both systems to the regional networks and libraries. The availability search function encompasses both the ZDB and the EZB and can be integrated into online library catalogues, retrieving holdings and licensing information for print and electronic journals from both databases.

The EZB allows participating libraries to catalogue and update their holdings within a single database using the same interface for both licence-based and freely accessible e-journals. Each participant can manage its licensed periodicals independently, including the integration of library-specific user information, and is provided with a customized interface indicating the titles for which the library has purchased a licence, using a system of "traffic lights". Each title is marked by a green, yellow or red dot. Green means that the journal is freely available on the internet; yellow signifies the title is only accessible to registered library users, either in the library itself or via a remote access connection; a red dot indicates an e-journal which has not been licensed by the library and for which the full text content cannot therefore be viewed, though the table of contents and abstracts can usually be displayed. A "pay-per-view" service for such journals is available from the publishers. In 2010 the EZB database listed around 52,000 titles, including about 27,000 freely accessible academic journals and 7,000 titles available exclusively in online form. Over 560 libraries use the EZB, including over 120 from outside Germany.

### Bibliographies of Early Imprints

Since a national library was not established in Germany until the 20<sup>th</sup> century there was also no

national bibliography to document works published in Germany following the invention of the printing press. The compilation of a retrospective national bibliography was not even considered, since the gap has been admirably filled by various national cataloguing projects dedicated to the printed literature of individual centuries and based on the records of the holdings of selected libraries.

The first of these is the Union Catalogue of Incunabula (*Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke – GW*), which is intended to record all literature printed in the 15<sup>th</sup> century including worldwide location details for all known surviving copies, most of which are in Germany. Eleven volumes have been published so far and these are also available in database form. The total number of recorded incunabula is estimated at 30,000 titles, of which 125,000 copies are known to exist in German libraries.

The Bavarian State Library has housed the German offices of the *Incunabula Short Title Catalogue* (ISTC) since 1988, the main offices of the ISTC being located in London under the aegis of the British Library. The catalogue database of incunabula held in German library collections and containing digital illustrations of the most important pages can be purchased on CD-ROM. Around 76,000 incunabula have been recorded in the German Incunabula Census, another 44,000 are to follow.

The task of recording the bibliographical details of all printed materials published in the centuries following the incunabula era is dependent on cooperative effort. The "Bibliography of Imprints of the German-Speaking Countries in the 16<sup>th</sup> Century" (*Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachbereich erschienenen Drucke des 16. Jahrhunderts – VD 16*), a bibliography published by the Bavarian State Library in collaboration with the Duke August Library in Wolfenbüttel, was begun in 1983 and has since been completed. The titles listed in the 22 printed volumes have since been transferred to a database and considerably augmented with additional material. The VD 16 database contains details of around 100,000 titles with 380,000 locations in 240 libraries.

## COOPERATION BETWEEN GERMAN LIBRARIES

Following VD 16 came the next DFG project, VD 17, structured along similar lines but conceived from the outset as a database, recording all works printed and published in the historical German-language region, regardless of the language of publication. In addition to details of title and holdings, records are enhanced by adding the characteristics of particular editions such as fingerprints, which may help to identify rare works. By 2010 the VD had listed more than 270,000 titles, with details of more than 650,000 individual copies. The total number of works published between 1601 and 1700 is estimated at around 300,000. With funding from the DFG work has been in progress for several years on the digitization of the printed works listed in the VD 16 and VD 17. Structural information is added before the works are made available on the internet.

The last in the line of retrospective national bibliographical projects is the Bibliography of Imprints of the German-speaking Countries in the 18<sup>th</sup> Century (*Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachraum erschienenen Drucke des 18. Jahrhunderts* – VD 18), commenced in 2009. It is planned to index around 600,000 titles and make the full texts available online by 2019.

The Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Germany (*Handbuch der historischen Buchbestände*) is a cooperative venture launched by German libraries with funding from the Volkswagen foundation. The work is edited by the book scholar Prof. Dr. Bernhard Fabian and published in 27 volumes by the Georg Olms press. It can be regarded as a supplement to the retrospective national bibliography. In contrast to conventional catalogues and bibliographies, the Handbook concentrates not on individual works but on library collections in their entirety. It is conceived

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *Duchess Anna Amalia Library in Weimar* has its namesake Duchess (who was elected library patroness in 1991) to thank for its particularly magnificent rococo library hall, completed in 1766. In 2004 a fire destroyed the upper stories and 50,000 books. The rococo hall was re-opened in 2007. In 2005 the library inaugurated a modern study centre. The library is an active contributor to various programs for the cataloguing of older materials and publishes the *International Bibliography of German Classical Literature 1750-1850*.

as an inventory of works published from the beginnings of the book printing era until the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century and includes all literary genres, drawing no distinction between German and foreign publications. It provides a chronological and systematic outline of the historical collections of around 1,500 German libraries of all varieties, its classification by Federal *Länder* reflecting the regional character of the German library system.

The Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Germany represents a new form of working tool for academic and library work and is particularly directed at those research disciplines with a historical bias. Coverage has been extended to neighbouring countries: The Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Austria (*Handbuch der historischen Buchbestände in Österreich*), published in four volumes, describes the holdings of more than 250 libraries, while the Handbook of German Historical Book Collections in Europe (*Handbuch deutscher historischer Buchbestände in Europa*) surveys the collections of selected libraries with especially extensive and significant holdings. The Handbook's three sections combine to form a record of older central European cultural history.

### Cooperative User and Information Services

An excellent example of German library cooperation in the field of user services is the interlibrary lending system (*Fernleihe*, sometimes also called the *Überregionaler* or *Deutscher Leihverkehr*). The system's roots go back to the 19<sup>th</sup> century, and interlibrary loan facilities are today provided as a standard service, though struggling against modern document ordering and delivery systems

better able to bridge the gap between rapid retrieval and slow delivery.

### National Interlibrary Lending

No library has ever been able to provide every book, periodical and information source its users may require, and this is no less true today than in the past. It was for this reason that the interlending system was developed at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century as a form of reciprocal assistance. Today the national interlibrary loan system is organized on a nationwide basis and is directed exclusively at teaching and research. In addition, it supplies academic literature for training and occupational purposes.

Following the Second World War, regional catalogues were established both as a way of finding out what holdings German libraries actually had and as a basis for an interlibrary loan system. Some of these central catalogues covered single federal states, others were more broadly based. They were usually attached to large regional libraries and many have been transferred to the regional union networks. The current German central catalogues are based in the ten interlibrary loan centres in Berlin, Dresden, Frankfurt am Main, Göttingen, Halle, Hamburg, Jena, Cologne, Munich and Stuttgart.

Interlibrary lending was formerly mainly regionally based and here the central catalogues played an indispensable role in title location within their own areas. By the beginning of the 1990s, the seven central regions of the pre-

For copyright reasons image is not available

The library of the former *Benedictine monastery at Amorbach* in Franconia (Bavaria), privately owned by the Princes of Leiningen since secularization in 1803, is a masterpiece of early Classicism, housed in the convent building (1789–1799). Plain white dominates the décor of the room, including the bookcases and finely-carved staircases. The collection of 31,000 volumes, to which additions are seldom made today, is indexed in the *Handbuch der historischen Buchbestände*.

For copyright reasons image is not available

unification Federal Republic had more than 50 million titles on record. Today the sole function of the central catalogues is the location of older holdings for which machine-readable records are not yet available. The network databases, and more recently search engines such as the KVK or the DigiBib, have taken over the coordination of the interlibrary loan system.

The number of annual interlibrary loan requests doubled from one to two million between 1966 and 1978. In 1995 more than three million interlibrary loan requests were processed; the number of active requests has since increased to 4.2 million (2009). The number of participating libraries has also increased; there are at present more than 1,100 libraries registered in the national interlibrary lending system. Their names and location codes (IDs) are listed in a location code index (*Sigel-Verzeichnis*), published by the

For copyright reasons image is not available

The Württemberg Regional Library (*Württembergische Landesbibliothek*) in Stuttgart was home to the central catalogue until the foundation of the Baden-Württemberg Library Service Centre (*Bibliotheksservicezentrum Baden-Württemberg*). Founded in 1765, the Library holds outstanding collections of special and older material, including a famous Bible collection, and maintains its own research centre, the Hölderlin Archive, which publishes the *Internationale Hölderlin-Bibliographie*. Integrated into the Library is the Library of Contemporary History (*Bibliothek für Zeitgeschichte*), a special library focusing on contemporary and war history since the First World War.

State Library in Berlin, which is also responsible for allocating the codes. The traditional interlibrary loans order system using ILL request forms has been replaced by online ordering incorporating availability checks for monographs and the electronic delivery of articles, speeding up the interlending process considerably. However, at the start of 2008 the second law on the regulation of copyright law in the information society came into force, bringing with it an amendment to the article on the ordering and delivery of copies. This statute made the electronic delivery of requested documents directly to the user illegal; articles scanned within the interlibrary lending system may only be exchanged between one library and another, so that the user still only receives a paper copy.

Interlibrary lending does not operate solely at national level; as a rule, community library systems themselves organize internal interlibrary loan systems between the central library and the individual branch and mobile libraries. Some federal states have developed a regional interlending structure connecting to the national system. Finally, there is the international interlending system in which German libraries also participate,

The *University Library* and Technical Information Library in Hanover (*Technische Informationsbibliothek – TIB*) in Lower Saxony have undergone continual growth in the past decades. The new building erected in 1965 was extended in 1986 and again in 1991; in 2002 a second location was added. The present five locations provide a total of 1,700 seats for the library users. The TIB is funded jointly by the Federal Government and the regional states, but also raises an increasingly large amount of money itself through the sale of its services, such as *subito*.



with the State Library in Berlin acting as the German international ILL clearinghouse.



### Electronic Document Delivery Services

Traditional interlibrary lending is increasingly being replaced by a new form of “interlending”, the main objective of which is to shorten delivery times. Using modern information and communications technology, document delivery enables the library to deal directly with the user instead of having to pass his or her request on to another library. This assumes that the user has access to the appropriate literature databases, but since nearly all libraries and library networks make their databases available on the internet as online catalogues, this is usually the case. The past ten years have seen the establishment of a number of commercial document delivery services using electronic order and payment methods. The National Subject libraries in Hanover, Kiel and Cologne were especially active in developing efficient systems of supplying article copies – and to a limited extent books – directly to the user, even outside Germany. The headquarters of the regional library networks implemented similar national supply systems, a good example being the online ordering system *GBVdirekt* set up by the Common Library Network (*Gemeinsamer Bibliotheksverbund – GBV*) and processing several hundred thousand requests each year. It was discontinued in 2007, as have been most of the other direct delivery systems.

The most important national document delivery service is *subito*, introduced in 1994 as the joint “Federal-State Initiative for the Acceleration and Improvement of Literature and Information Delivery Services” (*Beschleunigung der Literatur- und Informationsdienste*). It has since become firmly established as a customer-centred service enterprise. The members and suppliers of *subito*,

registered in 2003 as a non-profit association, are 38 efficient general and special libraries. The headquarters and full-time office are based in Berlin.

The document delivery service offers online search and ordering facilities, using the internet to supply subject literature directly to the user’s desk. Functions include not only the sending of article copies but also of books, collections, dissertations and other returnable literature. Orders are processed electronically and article copies can be delivered online, by fax or by post. Delivery is either within three working days (normal service) or within twenty-four hours (express service), excluding Saturdays and public holidays in both cases. The participating supplier libraries have been able to accelerate their routines to enable processing of *subito* orders within an average of 11 hours.

The *subito* service used by a customer depends on whether he or she is located in a German-speaking country or elsewhere. The German-speaking countries include Germany, Austria, Liechtenstein and Switzerland; all others are classed as international territory. A distinction is made between individuals and libraries as customer groups.

Prices are calculated according to the form (non-returnable copy or returnable loan), speed of delivery, method of delivery, the customer’s location, the licensing agreements with the publisher or the society for reproduction rights *Wort*, and the user’s customer category. There are separate categories for school pupils, students, commercial users, and private persons. The *subito Library Service* is aimed at libraries in Germany and abroad (except in the USA and Great Britain) and enables its customers to offer their users a 72-hour delivery service for journal articles at a special price. It may not be used to serve commercial customers.

A number of years ago German and international publishers took legal steps against *subito* aimed at forcing it to suspend its document delivery and interlibrary loans service to libraries in Germany and abroad. The legal wrangle ended in 2008 with a settlement. The ending of the dispute heralded a new form of cooperation between publishers and *subito*, an example

of which is a project with the publishing house Thieme involving the use of e-books. At international level the issue is regulated by licensing agreements.

On January 1<sup>st</sup> 2008 the second law on the regulation of copyright law in the information society came into force, bringing with it an amendment to the article on the ordering and delivery of copies. Electronic document delivery within Germany is now regulated by licensing contracts or compensation agreements with the society for reproduction rights *Wort*. The licensing fee or royalties are charged to the *subito* customer.

Despite these limitations, *subito* continued to increase its order volume, reaching annual figures of up to 1.3 million. Numbers have continually declined since 2008 and now total around 650,000 requests each year. The reasons for this decline, which to a lesser extent also applies to the traditional interlibrary loan system, can be found in the copyright restrictions, the high licence and royalty fees and the rapid increase in the number of electronic journals provided on the basis of national or campus licences and thus offering direct access to the required information.

### Cooperative Information Services

Digital information services are a fast-growing increment to traditional library and information centre facilities, whether in the form of a synchronous Info-Chat or through asynchronous channels such as e-mail or web forms. Information services are particularly effective when

integrated into a network of libraries and information centres, as is the case with the German Internet Library or *DigiAuskunft*.

The German Internet Library (*Deutsche Internetbibliothek – DIB*), a cooperative project launched at national level by a library consortium headed by the Bremen City Library, the Bertelsmann Foundation and the dbv, has been coordinated and hosted by the Library Service Centre Baden-Württemberg (*Bibliothekszentrum Baden-Württemberg*) since 2008. More than 50 public and academic libraries in Germany, Austria and Switzerland are members of the cooperative network, which provides library internet users with a free e-mail account and an annotated link list of German language websites arranged by subject and including more than 6,500 web addresses.

Similar virtual cooperative inquiry networks focusing on academic subjects have been set up by the University Library Centre (HBZ) in Cologne with *DigiAuskunft* and the Library Service Centre Baden-Württemberg (BSZ) in Constance with *InfoDesk*. *Question Point* is a worldwide information service funded by the OCLC. The ZLB in Berlin offers this multilingual service in 26 languages. It can also be used over the mobile telephone network thanks to the integration of QR code.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *City Library in Friedrichshafen on Lake Constance* is one of the 60 libraries forming the German Internet Library. The City Library moved into the new building with its all-glass façade in 2007 under the name Media House on the Lake k42 (architects Braunger & Wörtz) and has since proved very popular. No other German city library in a town with 50,000 to 100,000 inhabitants has a higher lending rate than Friedrichshafen. The 100,000 media yielded a total number of 700,000 issues. One of the highlights of the new ensemble of buildings is the round function hall known as The Pebble, in which special events for all age groups are regularly staged.

## 6 THE FUTURE OF THE LIBRARY, THE LIBRARY OF THE FUTURE

### Parameters and strategic issues

What does the future hold for the library? Will libraries as we know them still exist in ten or twenty years' time? Has the digital revolution already sounded their death-knell, will they be ousted or even replaced by automated databases and search engines? Even if they do still continue to exist despite all prophecies of doom: What will they look like? Will they be just a concept, a virtual space – or will they still have a physical location with four walls and a roof?

It is no coincidence that the librarianship associations BIB and VDB chose the slogan "Libraries for the future – a future for libraries" for their 100th jubilee Library Congress in June 2011. The slogan reflects both the Congress programme and the libraries' demands. Education, information and knowledge are the raw materials which will shape the future. Information literacy, lifelong learning, global knowledge transfer, top-level research and the information overload are the current challenges addressed to social and educational policy-makers and flanked by the promotion of reading and social integration through education. The official opening greeting throws out a challenge to all German librarians to make their own contribution to the idea of free access to education and knowledge for all social strata. Libraries should become actively involved in the future of the education and knowledge-based societies – indeed this ought to be their main goal. But they also need a secure future to enable them to pass on information, collect the knowledge of our time, preserve our

cultural heritage and continue to develop new information and education services.

Much of the old confidence in the mission and self-conception of the library has dissipated in the past few years, not only, but perhaps especially, here in Germany. Under the influence of the new digital media, the reading of printed books can no longer be taken for granted. Prophets of doom foretell the demise of the book. Everything is in flux. The library users of the 21st century have changed too: they are better educated, better off, more mobile and more responsible than they were 20 years ago. Modern library customers decide for themselves how they wish to spend their leisure time, for leisure is in short supply. Libraries must compete with other organizations in the leisure marketplace. At the same time, changes are taking place in public administration, leading to a gradual privatization of individual services and their subjection to the stringent principles of cost-performance-analysis.

The massive social, economic and technological changes of the last decade have given rise to a number of questions: Will the new technologies mean that libraries will in future operate in a virtual space? Will the archives, museums and libraries of the world melt down to form a gigantic network of human memory? In the face of these radical upheavals, the individual components of the contemporary system of general and academic communication consisting of

The Regional Library of Mecklenburg-West Pomerania (*Landesbibliothek Mecklenburg-Vorpommern*) in Schwerin is an admirable example of the felicitous union of a converted historical and a brand-new contemporary building. The Library was founded in 1779 and for 118 years was located in the immediate vicinity of the cathedral under extremely cramped conditions. In 2004 it found a new home. The prestigious historical building in the Mecklenburg Renaissance style, formerly officers' quarters and now housing the library's administrative offices, is linked by a glazed bridge to the modern extension containing the open-access collections and stacks.

For copyright reasons image is not available

For copyright reasons image is not available

publishers, libraries, database producers, authors and readers will face the same challenges as the printed media books and journals – they will all have to be re-defined. Even though today, in the year 2011, libraries can still be regarded as the main general providers of information to the sciences and education, future developments already indicate that in five or ten years they may well be only one of several such providers in the information market. But what will the consequences be?

Looking into the immediate future from a present point of view it is possible to define five generally valid hypotheses.

- Hypothesis 1: *Education* will be the decisive factor determining the future course of society, and more especially of the economy, in the latter half of the 21<sup>st</sup> century.
- Hypothesis 2: The mere *retrieval of information* will be less of a problem in the coming decades than the retrieval of the *required information*; the focus will be on quality rather than quantity.
- Hypothesis 3: The concept of the *library as marketplace* allowing real contact between real people must be completely re-thought; the idea of the lonely desk and PC monitor as a window on the "global village" internet world is no longer good enough,
- Hypothesis 4: Tomorrow's library must be identifiable with a real physical space and form an integral part of the cultural and social life of the community. Without a library building,

The Konrad Wolf University of Film and Television (*Hochschule für Film und Fernsehen "Konrad Wolf"*) in Potsdam-Babelsberg (Brandenburg) trains students in film and television. It endeavours to combine artistic and academic course elements with practice-related content, a goal underlined by the location of the modern university building, completed in the year 2000, which also houses the Library and is situated in the centre of the media city of Babelsberg. The so-called "fish-heads" are equipped with projectors for viewing video films.

towns will have no soul and their citizens will lose all sense of orientation within the maze of networked machines.

- Hypothesis 5: The proportion of printed to digital media will level off at 50:50 over the next 10 years. The non-book sector will experience only a nominal growth rate.

The increase in the variety of available media types will unquestionably influence library development in both a positive and a negative sense. The high investment costs involved in the purchase of new electronic storage media and data reading devices act as a deterrent to many funding bodies, especially when the future availability and market presence of these products cannot yet be foreseen with any accuracy. Electronic books (e-books), hailed in 2000 as the lucrative market of the future, shortly afterwards to be decried as medial marginalia, have recently experienced an unexpected renaissance and seem to have an excellent chance of market success in the second decade of the 21<sup>st</sup> century. This is a good example of the extreme difficulties involved in assessing the potential of innovative technology, whether in the form of electronic storage media or new online distribution channels.

The active environment encompassing publishers, book and media producers and including both their traditional and digital media products will undoubtedly play a decisive role in the shaping the future of the library. The market for electronic journals is of elementary importance to academic libraries. For some time now, a large proportion of scholarly journals have been published in electronic form only, even though customers often still prefer the printed form. The pricing spiral instigated by a number of publish-

## THE FUTURE OF THE LIBRARY, THE LIBRARY OF THE FUTURE

The *Media Centre* at Neckarsulm (Baden-Württemberg) provides its users with an up-to-date selection of books, periodicals, audio files, films, digital media and internet resources and perceives itself as a meeting place for young and old alike. The idea of the new building, opened in 2004, is to make knowledge as transparent as its own striking construction, the facade of which makes use of a wide range of different materials. The intention of the architects Bechler and Krummlauf was to introduce a new concept into conventional library architecture, designed to explore the role of electronic media and the future of the book and to reflect these in its structure, consisting of two buildings linked by a glazed walkway separating quiet and busy zones from each other.

For copyright reasons image is not available

ing houses has aggravated the ousting of the printed journal.

Many experts and authors consider the fundamental significance of the library either to have been misjudged or to have been politically ignored. The main reasons for this are insufficient political awareness of the library's functions coupled with a lack of confidence in the innovative capabilities of this centuries-old institution; it seems no-one is willing to impute to the library the ability to adapt to the challenges of the information society. This has led to a period of stagnation in library funding, which has escalated over the last five years into the full-scale under-funding of some libraries. It appears that German librarians and the library lobby have failed to convince decision-makers of the library's ability to function as central information and education agency just as well in this country as it is known to do in the Anglo-Saxon and Scandinavian countries.

The future of the library is characterized by the key concept "Local Access, Global Information". It should be the political intention to enable libraries in all sectors to promote media digitization, media distribution, the provision of enquiry services and the structuring of knowledge, to develop models for so doing and to pave the way to the future. At the same time, libraries must also function as contact points for all kinds of cultural output, events and enquiries. Without doubt, however, it will be necessary to assign economic considerations a higher priority than in the past.

For copyright reasons image is not available

The *Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm Centre* (architect Max Dudler) was opened in 2009 as the new Main Library of the Humboldt University in Berlin. It houses the holdings of 12 humanities and social sciences branch and sectional libraries. 1.5 million of the 2.5 million media units are arranged by subject on open access. The 1.250 workspaces for the users including 500 computer and 44 multimedia workstations together with the ten group study rooms and 55 individual desks are scarcely enough to cope with the demand for space within the library which has developed into a popular place to study.

## Concepts and models for the public library of the future

How then might the library of tomorrow – with the emphasis here on the public library – really look, without resorting to visions of an all too exaggerated nature? The librarian Klaus Dahm has recently developed a series of four models well worth considering, which combine the present and the future in a particularly vivid way.

### *The “Feel-good” Library*

As documented by the discrepancy between the number of active “borrowers” and the far larger number of detected “visitors” (with no borrowing activity), there obviously exists a considerable demand for a social communication space open to the public. Even today it is hard to imagine the modern library without its cafeteria. In Anglo-Saxon libraries, pleasantly-furnished rooms known as “Living Rooms” have become an established feature, inviting visitors to drop in for a chat, to surf the internet, enjoy a cup of coffee or read a book in relaxing surroundings. In the planning and conception of future libraries it will more important than ever before to pay more attention to furniture and fittings suited to the user experience and to designing flexible and “function-free” spaces. Evening and week-end opening will be a matter of course. Tomorrow’s library is a source of collective inspiration, somewhere with a positive atmosphere and an appealing, informal style where people want

to spend time and where they can explore the world of information retrieval, book and modern media.

### *The Network Library*

Modern libraries have long proved their worth in the business of barrier-free provision of information and knowledge services to all ages and social strata. As no library can possibly stock every item its users might need, the public library of the future will need to be part of an even more tightly-knit library network offering access to the total pool of literature and media, which by that time will be even larger. A cataloguing network in the form of a common media database will be particularly effective if customers are able to access it from their homes, schools or workplaces. It will be essential to work in a more systematic way towards the integration of public and academic library resources within the network than has hitherto been the case, ensuring the creation of an allowing the customer to use every library within the network with a single library pass and enabling any media unit to be ordered via the internet and sent to the customer’s local library for collection, or directly to his or her home for an extra charge.

### *The Combination Library*

In no small number of locations, libraries funded by a variety of different bodies exist alongside or even in direct competition with one another, without any form of official cooperation. In difficult economic times, possible synergy benefits will be an important consideration in investment evaluation. One promising option would be to merge several smaller libraries to form one large physical and administrative unit. Where several

For copyright reasons image is not available

The new building of the University and Regional Library of Thuringia in Jena (*Thüringer Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek*) in Jena (architects: Heckmann, Kristel, Jung), opened in 2001, possibly answers the question of whether libraries in the digital network era need buildings at all. The single-tier library system in Jena, with holdings of over four million volumes, consists of the Main Library, three larger subject libraries and a large number of sectional and branch libraries scattered throughout the city. It is planned to reduce their number in stages.

cultural and educational institutions exist in a single town, it would be worth considering amalgamating them at a single site. This could mean combining the local museum, school library, resource centre, local archive, adult education centre, art gallery and library to form one united "Information and Media Centre", assuming appropriate accommodation is available.

### *The City Library Agency*

If physical fusion is for some reason not a viable option, there are other ways of combining the various types of administrative and functional library structures to achieve a networked library system. By this are meant the many school libraries which often exist as separate islands, isolated from one another. The city library of the future could here play an integrative and cooperative role as library agency (*Bibliotheksagentur*). This would involve establishing a "School Libraries Office" (*Schulbibliothekarische Arbeitsstelle*) at a central location, responsible for all the schools in the area. Its objective would be to train and advise the library staff, handle book and media acquisitions for all the local partners, undertake the cataloguing and processing of the collections, coordinate staff timetables and compile performance indicators.

What other tendencies can we detect, what further trends can we observe? Public libraries will become multifunctional in every sense of the word. The broad-based and deep indexing of all possible sources will augment the traditional

The Federal Republic launched the publicity campaign "Germany – Land of Ideas" during the World Football Championship in 2006 to portray Germany as a progressive and imaginative country. Several libraries are represented among the "365 Places in the Land of Ideas", selected from over 1,200 submissions; for the jury the libraries' innovative propensity was the decisive factor. Among these was the *University Library of Regensburg* with its successful product the "Electronic Periodicals Library". Due to its resounding success the competition was repeated in the following years. Once again the 365 winning locations included a number of libraries, such as the *State Library Centre of Rhineland Palatinate* in 2009 or the dbv with its promotional campaign "Meeting Point Library" (*Treffpunkt Bibliothek*) in 2010.

literature provision function. With the coming of the internet as information medium librarians have assumed a new role as the "navigators of the data networks" and this function will become increasingly important. The third core activity of libraries both now and in the future will continue to be adult educational programmes and cultural work. Libraries are often the only continuously active education and cultural institutions outside the schools, particularly in rural areas. Their work will be increasingly firmly rooted in multilateral cooperation. Different funding institutions will work together more closely in the future and public and school libraries or media centres will join forces, combining libraries from both these sectors, resulting in enhanced synergy and diversified use.

Close cooperation with adult education centres and with city archives and museums will be established, and this is without doubt a prudent path to take. It is also realistic to assume there will be cooperation between libraries and employment agencies, job centres or tourist offices. Library managers will be expected to demonstrate competence in flexibility, willingness to cooperate, coordination skills and readiness to implement new organizational and project-oriented models.

For copyright reasons image is not available



## Vision and reality in academic libraries

A glance at the present and future development of librarianship reveals the constantly-changing role of libraries in the information society, in which information has become a basic resource and the information media are themselves subject to an accelerated rate of change. The need for information has increased in all social areas but at the same time so has the amount of information in circulation, so that it can be described as a glut. Libraries contribute to the satisfaction of this need in the form of traditional and electronic media provision, whereby the character, function and self-conception of the library are in flux. In principle this is valid for all types of library but changes in information needs can best be seen in the academic, research and teaching library context, so that it follows that academic libraries will be more directly affected by these changes than public libraries.

First of all, it is necessary to point out that all those visionaries who prophesied that the end of the book era was nigh, and that electronic and digital media would march forth as sole victors, were wrong. The book, or rather printed material in general, has held its own because it has several advantages that the new media undoubtedly do not possess – it needs no electrical energy or technical equipment, it can be used anywhere, it has a demonstrably long life,

it makes reading long texts easier, it cannot be tampered with and so guarantees the authenticity of the contents etc., quite apart from aesthetic, bibliophile and other book-related aspects. The world of scholarship is well aware of these and other related factors such as quality control, scholarly reputation, proof of academic qualification etc. It is to be expected that the form of a particular medium best suited to a particular group of users will enjoy a long life.

Leading bodies such as the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*) are convinced that printed media will retain their relevance for information provision in research and teaching, although the importance of digital publications will increase. A logical result of this double function would be the development in the near future of a type of academic library accommodating a mixture of both printed and digital publications and information sources – the *hybrid library*. Since it is hardly to be expected that library budgets will increase, it will be necessary to maintain a fine balance between both media forms and to adjust this continuously according to supply and demand. Academic libraries have long since begun to shift the focus of their work from holdings management to enhanced location and procurement services (access contra holding). Nevertheless the size of the acquisitions budget remains a cause for concern.

However there are signs of a developing split regarding information needs and their satisfaction. Whereas in the natural and engineering sciences, medicine and computer science print media can no longer be regarded as the primary source of information, so that libraries can even expect to lose their leading role as information provider, in all other disciplines the library will remain *the* archive for printed holdings, although even in the “book-centred” subject areas classic

For copyright reasons image is not available

It is possible that in the future more importance will be attached to the aesthetics of library architecture and the appeal of the library atmosphere to the senses as a centre for relaxation and communication beyond its function as a mere storehouse of knowledge. The *Public Library* of the local community of *Neufahrn* (Bavaria), constructed in the form of a ship with a glass “prow” and incorporating varying window shapes and a staircase bathed in natural light, may well be indicative of the direction modern library architecture is taking.



collection-building will suffer somewhat as a result of the economic situation and the advance of digitization. University libraries in particular face the difficult task of having to serve two very different knowledge cultures.

Although library statistics indicate that printed media are still being acquired in large quantities, the proportion of digital media – be these e-journals, e-books, retro-catalogued library holdings, databases or other electronic resources – is increasing. In view of the online accessibility of knowledge it should come as no surprise that the issue figures in libraries are sinking. There is a contrasting tendency for libraries to become study spaces. Both state and university libraries have registered an increase in the number of users thronging into their reading rooms and open access collections. As a result work desks are in many cases in short supply, leading to short-term regulatory measures and necessitating long-term increases in capacity. Yet the establishment of learning centres or learning environments, which have led to first concrete examples in the neighbouring European Union countries, in still in its infancy in Germany. Both academic and public libraries see themselves as learning centres and include learning arrangements and knowledge management in their concepts.

As surveys conducted at a number of universities have shown, university libraries are expected to index the relevant scholarly internet sources and provide access to them via easy-to-use search engines. Libraries should function as “navigators on the ocean of knowledge”, providing their users with the appropriate weapons to stem the tide of information threatening to swamp them. Libraries will also be expected to increase their range of electronic media and services without neglecting the upkeep of their book and journal collections, since books continue to be regarded as the primary medium in many subject areas. The development of the Digital Library implies not only access to electronic journals and full-text works, and to databases and other internet sources, but also active information management. This includes the creation of portal solutions and search engines to bundle the wide range of digital and conventional information resources. If libraries can form links between the digital and printed worlds in this

way, they will become Hybrid Libraries in the true sense of the word and will be able to use this to partially justify their existence.

Students are expressly demanding the active teaching of information and media literacy and need help with the new academic study methods (online tutorials, electronic reading lists etc.) and forms of scholarly publishing (electronic publishing, multi-media presentations etc.) To meet these demands, libraries will need the appropriate technical and organizational infrastructure and librarians the appropriate skills and abilities, which they will acquire both at the time of their initial training and later.

Academic libraries are not solely educational institutions; they also have a cultural mandate, requiring them to archive, index and preserve the cultural heritage and the knowledge of earlier generations recorded in paper form. The “Alliance for the Preservation of Written Cultural Assets” has set out to rescue endangered original records of cultural and scholarly traditions and to make sure that society is aware that the preservation of these traditions should be regarded as a national imperative. The Alliance has already been able to demonstrate first signs of success on the way to the development of the various individual conservation measures into a national strategy for collection preservation.

## The Digital Library

For the last few years the main focus of librarianship activity has been on accelerating the development of the Digital Library. The libraries in the higher education sector have followed the recommendations of the academic and research sectors to become centres of digital information and publications. The funding programmes of the German Research Foundation are also attuned to the intensive expansion of electronic information provision services.

Although the opinion often voiced by the contemporary press that the digitization of society in general is a cultural obligation and that libraries should therefore be committed to making themselves redundant, as it were, by digitizing the entire body of printed publications has been energetically repudiated by librarians, the

For copyright reasons image is not available

magic word “digitization” is nevertheless almost ubiquitous in our libraries.

Digitization centres have been operating in Munich and Göttingen for years, and also accept external commissions. Numerous academic libraries have set up their own digitization centres and digitize selected holdings either on their own initiative or in cooperation with partner libraries. The internet enterprise Google has launched a programme of mass digitization with its German partner, the Bavarian State Library. Libraries have no hope of winning against commercial financial heavyweights such as Google Print; the strength of library products lies not in their quantity but in their quality and above all in their commitment to safeguarding free accessibility and long-term availability.

In 2005 a central system for the location and acquisition of freely accessible retrospectively digitized library materials, the Central Index of Digitized Imprints (*das Zentrale Verzeichnis Digitalisierter Drucke*) was established on a cooperative basis. This portal not only provides a review of digital collections and digital libraries but also reflects the astonishing variety of digitization projects, revealing that the “philosophy” behind the digitization concept is wide-ranging. Candidate works for digitization are selected on the common basis of scholarly worth, demand, and preservation and legal aspects.

In the long term the German Digital Library (DDB), at present in the development phase and on target to provide a wide range of users with central, mostly free digital access to the culture and knowledge of the German-speaking area by the end of 2011, is expected to play the more important role. Information from 30,000 cultural

According to estimates, about 12% of the approximately 135 million books published in Germany after 1940 have already disintegrated and are thus no longer available for use; a further 30% are so yellowed that to avoid further damage they should be withdrawn from use. Individual books can only be subjected to restoration measures in certain cases; mass de-acidification, as carried out by the Centre for Book Preservation (*Zentrum für Bucherhaltung GmbH*) in Leipzig (Saxony), may be a possible alternative.

and academic institutions is to be drawn together in a common network. The national portal DDB forms part of the EU initiative for the development of a European Digital Library which was launched towards the end of 2008 under the name *Europeana* and is dedicated to making the European cultural heritage generally accessible.

The German library associations join with the research institutions and a range of scientific organizations in endorsing the chance the internet offers to present the whole breadth of human knowledge and cultural heritage interactively with guaranteed worldwide accessibility. Alongside the conventional forms of knowledge distribution, the *Open Access* movement also propagates using the alternatives afforded by the internet for the exchange of scholarly research results according to the “Open Access Principle”. The publishing presses which have been set up at some universities can be developed into Open Access publishers supporting the publication of works in electronic form while dispensing with the parallel print version either partially or completely.

This principle assumes the active participation of every individual producer of academic knowledge and every administrator of the cultural heritage, for the publication method requires every author and every copyright-holder to grant free access and right of use to any user and furthermore to deposit a complete version of his or her publication on the archive server of a trustworthy institution which has agreed to support the Open Access movement, so that its long-term accessibility is assured.

Since this alternative publication model competes directly with conventional forms of knowledge distribution, many publishers are critical of Open Access publishing. The same is true of

The digitization centres in Munich (Bavaria) and Göttingen (Lower Saxony), both with the financial support of the DFG, participate in the development of the Distributed Digital Library through the conversion and presentation of digital resources. The Munich Digitization Centre (*Münchener Digitalisierungszentrum* – MDZ), pictured right, runs its own projects but also accepts digitization commissions from other institutions. Nine Special Subject Fields Libraries under the aegis of the State and University Library of Göttingen have formed a consortium for the digitization of journal holdings. The non-profit digital journals archive *Digizeitschriften*. *Das Deutsche Digitale Zeitschriftenarchiv e.V.* offers full or partial online access to around 200 journals.

For copyright reasons image is not available

many authors, who see a certain security risk not only for the producers but also for the addressees of these publications; they are concerned not only about ensuring the quality of the publications, the integrity of the data and the long-term accessibility of the documents but also about whether their internet publications will be recognized by the scientific community, for on this depends their personal reputation and academic career.

The long-term archiving of electronic publications undoubtedly presents a big challenge. The new law on the German National Library has created the legal framework for the collection and storage of “media works in non-physical form” published in Germany, thus ensuring that they will be permanently available to everyone. It is intended to extend this framework to include network publications in the legal deposit regulations governing regional libraries. For years, work has been in progress on the development and testing of the technical, library-related and organizational preconditions for long-term archiving. “Nestor” – *Network Expertise in Long-term Storage and Long-term Accessibility of Digital Resources* – was established in 2003 as an information and communication platform for all interested partners, covering all aspects of long-term storage. A DIN standard ensuring data integrity and information authenticity in respect of long-term storage is currently being compiled.

In 2004 the project “Kopal – Cooperative Building of a Long-term Archive of Digital Information” (*Kooperativer Aufbau eines Langzeitarchivs digitaler Informationen*) was launched.

Kopal complements Nestor in the technical, software development and work-flow areas and is intended to demonstrate how it is possible to share the work of creating a reliable digital archive to safeguard the integrity, authenticity and accessibility of the digital archives stored there on a long-term basis. Kopal commenced operation as a digital archive in 2006, since when several tens of thousands of electronic documents of both the project partners German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) and the State and University Library in Göttingen (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Göttingen*) have been committed to its archive, including 55,000 doctoral theses published later than 1997 and received by the DNB from all the German universities. On the next leg of the project it is planned to test migration and emulation processes to ensure that the data content of the documents can be read out and thus remain usable for years to come.

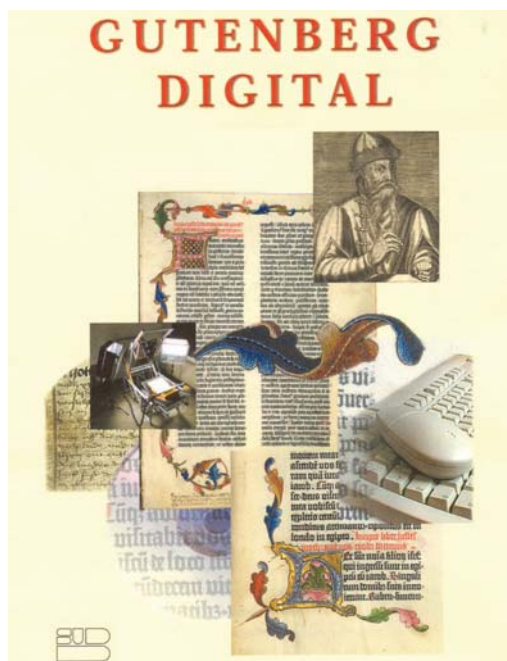
The internet presents libraries with a further challenge. Libraries are already feeling the effect of direct competition from search engines such as Google, which supposedly indexes more than ten million websites, and services like Google Scholar, Google Print, Google Earth or Google News or interactive platforms like *Wikipedia* and *weblogs*, also known as social software and typical of the direction the internet is going (Web 2.0). A large number of library users including students and university staff start a search by using a search engine and only later encounter services specifically provided by libraries. The technical and logical networking of the diverse forms of internet sources would seem

## THE FUTURE OF THE LIBRARY, THE LIBRARY OF THE FUTURE

to be a promising solution to this problem. The evolution of a *Semantic Web* (Web 3.0) and the *Linked Open Data System* will lead to the development of new search and information options. The data involved are available on the internet without legal restriction (open) and can be linked automatically to other data by means of a suitable description language (linked) in such a way that related content can be imported into the search. Catalogue enrichment will similarly play an increasingly important role.

Libraries will probably not be able to compete on a quantitative basis with the mighty commercial services; they will only be able to hold their own if they continue to maintain the high standards of their products. These include the high-quality indexing of research-relevant resources strictly on the basis of authority files and the development of subject-centred and interdisciplinary search facilities and navigation systems. Notable nationwide examples are the Virtual Subject Libraries (*Virtuelle Fachbiblio-*

*theken*) within the former national portal *Vas-coda* together with access platforms such as the Database Info-System and the Electronic Periodicals Library (*Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek*). It is also worth mentioning the licensing of electronic journals, newspapers, books and databases once more at this point. Libraries must respond to changes in the availability of information and the behavioural patterns of their users by building an *integrated digital information system* to create not only virtual research and learning environments but also a modern information management structure. The German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*) is providing support for the development of just such an overall system in the form of a funding programme scheduled to run until 2015. And libraries should be just as consequential about using the interactive functions of the internet to communicate with their users as they are about making use of the internet for their information services.



On the 600th anniversary of the birth of Johannes Gutenberg, the Göttingen Digitization Centre (*Göttinger Digitalisierungszentrum – GDZ*) scanned all 1,282 pages of the parchment copy of the Gutenberg Bible held by the State and University Library of Göttingen (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Göttingen*) in Lower Saxony and made them available both on the internet and on CD-ROM. Between the first printing of this edition, which Gutenberg produced with the help of the new technology of the time, and its digitization in the year 2000 of exactly the same edition, there have elapsed around 550 years of book and library history.

## Summary and Outlook

Libraries, whether public or academic, can only provide their users with the services presented above if their existence is assured and their funding bodies provide them with sufficient resources and staff. Thus the future of the library is not only a question of form and technology; it also has a political dimension. It is essential to make it clear not only to the political decision-makers but also to the media and to the nation in general that libraries are destined to play a key role in the information society. But they will only be able to do this role and its underlying expectations justice if they recognize and accept the challenges presented by the information society, if they make sure they use every opportunity for technological innovation and organizational improvement and if they counteract the political, financial and structural weaknesses of the German library system with efficiency and effectiveness. Then they will remain what they have always been: Portals to the many new paths and visions of the future.

## APPENDICES

### The Authors

For copyright reasons image is not available

**Jürgen Seefeldt**, born in 1953, studied public librarianship in Cologne. Employment as Certified Librarian (Diplom-Bibliothekar) at the City Library (Stadtbücherei) of Hamm, the Technical Library of the United Electricity Corporation of Westphalia (Vereinigtes Elektrizitätswerke Westfalen) in Dortmund; from 1979–1985 deputy director of the City Library (Stadtbücherei) of Herne, from 1985–1991 Director of the Country Libraries (Kreisbüchereien) of Unna; from 1991–2004 Director of State Service Centre for Public Libraries (Landesbüchereistelle) Rhineland-Palatinate in Koblenz, since 2004 Local Director of the Regional Library Centre of Rhineland-Palatinate; teaching contracts at the University of Applied Sciences, Cologne (FH Köln) and the University of Applied Sciences for Public Librarianship in Bonn. From 1995–1998 co-editor of the professional journal *BuB*, from 1998–2001 member of the National Executive Director of the *dbv*, since 1998 chief executive of the Regional Association for the Rhineland-Palatinate (*dbv-Landesverbandes Rheinland-Pfalz*). Author of numerous publications. Co-author of the book "Seefeldt/Metz: Unterhaltungsliteratur in Öffentlichen Bibliotheken", the 3<sup>rd</sup> edition of the handbook "Busse- Ernestus-Plassmann-Seefeldt: Das Bibliothekswesen in Deutschland" and the textbook "Bibliotheken und Informationsgesellschaft in Deutschland – eine Einführung" (Plassmann, Rösch, Seefeldt, Umlauf), first published in 2006, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. 2011.

For copyright reasons image is not available

**Dr. Ludger Syré**, born in 1953, studied history and German language and literature in Freiburg, Munich and Tübingen, gaining a doctorate in East European history; Training as Academic and Research Librarian (Wissenschaftlicher Bibliothekar) in Tübingen and Cologne; since 1987 subject specialist/reference librarian for history, contributor to the State Bibliography (Landesbibliographie) of Baden-Württemberg and Head of the Digitalization Department of the State Library of Baden (Badische Landesbibliothek) in Karlsruhe; Instructor at the University of Karlsruhe and Mannheim; between 1992 and 2002 two years on the Executive Board and eight years on the Membership Committee of the Association of German Librarians (Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare) as well as seven years as executive Director of the State Association of the VDB for Baden-Württemberg (VDB-Landesverband Baden-Württemberg); Author of numerous book and journal publications and editor of two special issues of the *ZfBB* on regional bibliographies and literary estates.

### The Translator

For copyright reasons image is not available

**Janet MacKenzie** studied French language and literature at Birmingham University (UK). She holds a post-graduate qualification in librarianship and is a member of the Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals. After five years as Tutor Librarian at a College of Commerce and Technology in the British Midlands she left Britain to become librarian at the Geschwister Scholl Institute of Political Science at the University of Munich. Since 1996 she has been Site Librarian at one of the University's faculty libraries and has given various courses in English for Librarians at the Bavarian Library School.

## Picture References (in Order of Appearance in the Text)

The illustrations on the front cover show from left to right: City Library Hamm (City of Hamm), IKMZ Cottbus (R. Schuster), Grimm Forum of the Humboldt University of Berlin (M. Bulaty), German National Library, Frankfurt am Main (Th. Linke)

The illustrations on the rear cover show from top to bottom: Bibliotheca Ottenburana in Ottobeuren (C. Seelbach), Anna Amalia Library Weimar (U. Schwarz), University Library Heidelberg (Wikipedia), DNB German Library Leipzig (Appaloosa, Wikipedia)

Claudia Lux (T. Deussen)	7
Ulm City Library (M. Wacker StB Ulm)	8
The Brandenburg Technical University (R. Schuster)	9
The Library of Hildesheim Cathedral (L. Engelhardt)	11
Duke August Library, Wolfenbüttel (HAB)	12
Court Library of the House of Hohenzollern, Sigmaringen (C. Seelbach)	13
Württemberg State Library, Stuttgart (Württ. LB)	13
The Library of the Benedictine Monastery of Ottobeuren (C. Seelbach)	14
Royal Library in Berlin (SBB PK, Wikipedia)	14
The State Library of Bamberg (C. Seelbach)	15
University and Regional Library of Halle (ULB Halle)	16
University and Regional Library of Halle (ULB Halle)	16
The Deutsche Bücherei, Leipzig (Appaloosa, Wikipedia)	17
Parliamentary Library (Reichstagsbibliothek), Berlin (Bildarchiv Preuß. Kulturbesitz, Berlin)	17
Library of the Hanseatic City of Lübeck (J. Fligge)	18
City and Regional Library of Potsdam (C. Seelbach)	18
World map from 1633 published in Amsterdam by Mercator and Hondius (Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin)	19
University Library in Leipzig (Fa. Ahrend-Mauser)	20
University and Research Library of Erfurt/Gotha (S. Müller-Naumann)	21
County Library of Aurich (C. Seelbach)	28
University of Bochum (Universität Bochum, Wikipedia)	30

Business and Economics Sectional Library of the University Library of Eichstätt (C. Seelbach)	31	Central Library of Hamm City Libraries (Stadt Hamm)	60
Study centre of the Anna Amalia Library, Weimar (U. Schwarz, Klassik Stiftung Weimar)	32	City Library of Westerstede (J. Feist, ekz)	61
Bookshops in Karlsruhe (BLB, B. Ehlig)	34	Augsburg City Library (J. Schambeck)	61
Main Library of the Catholic University of Eichstätt (C. Seelbach)	37	Youth Library in Munich (C. Seelbach)	63
Court Library of the Prince of Thurn and Taxis, Regensburg (L.W. Splitta, Fürst Thurn und Taxis Zentralarchiv)	38	City Library of Bernburg on the Saale (J. Feist, ekz)	63
German National Library, Frankfurt am Main (St. Jockel, DNB)	39	School Media Centre at the CJD Christophorus School in Königswinter (CJD Chr.-Schule Königswinter)	64
German Music Archiv, Leipzig (B. Kaiser, DNB)	40	Main City Library in Bremen (StB Bremen)	66
State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage (C. Seelbach)	42	Company works library, Burghausen (Wacker AG)	67
Bavarian State Library, Munich (BSB München)	43	Düsseldorf City Libraries (ekz, Reutlingen)	69
German National Library of Medicine, Cologne (ZBMED)	44	German National Library in Frankfurt am Main (C. Seelbach)	71
Regional Library of Oldenburg (C. Seelbach)	45	“Heinrich Heine” City Library in Halberstadt (J. Feist, ekz)	78
Distinguished polymath (Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz Library – Regional Library of Lower Saxony in Hanover)	46	Various bookbinding services including laminated binding and cover reinforcement for paperbacks (ekz)	82
State and City Library of Augsburg (C. Seelbach)	46	City Library of Gütersloh (C. Seelbach)	83
Library of the Francke Foundations, Halle (W. Ziegler)	47	The Library in the Indonesian capital Jakarta. (Goethe-Institut Jakarta)	84
Library of the Historicum, a departmental library of Munich University Library (J. Feist, ekz)	48	Philology Library of the Free University of Berlin (P. v. Recklinghausen)	87
Codex Manesse, with its popular miniatures of Walther von der Vogelweide (Lossen, UB Heidelberg)	49	Lower Saxony State and University Library of Göttingen (SUB Göttingen)	89
New university library building in Karlsruhe (Th. Mechau)	50	Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage (C. Seelbach)	90
This illustration shows letters by the writers Friedrich Schiller, Frank Kafka and Günter Grass (DLA, Marbach)	52	Baden Regional Library, Karlsruhe. (C. Seelbach)	91
German National Library of Economics, Kiel (L. Roth, ZBW)	52	Saxonian Regional Library (M. Weimar)	92
Johannes a Lasco Library, Emden (T. Riehle)	53	Saxonian Regional Library (H. Ahlers)	92
Library of the German Parliament, Berlin (J.F. Müller, Bundestagsbibliothek)	54	Tübingen University Library (C. Seelbach)	93
City library in the city of Landau (J. Feist, ekz)	55	Duke August Library in Wolfenbüttel (Herzog August Bibliothek)	94
Central Library of the City and Regional Library in Dortmund (J. Feist, ekz)	55	City Library of Würzburg (C. Seelbach)	96
City Library in Biberach an der Riss (J. Seefeldt)	56	Duchess Anna Amalia Library in Weimar (Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek)	102
Book buses of the Koblenz City Library (above) (J. Seefeldt) City Library in Frankfurt am Main (below) (StB Frankfurt a.M.)	58	Library of the former Benedictine monastery at Amorbach (C. Seelbach)	103

## APPENDICES

Regional Library of Mecklenburg-West Pomerania in Schwerin (Kummer)	107	Eichstätt, Main University Library	31, 37	Regensburg, University Library	111
The Konrad Wolf University of Film and Television in Potsdam-Babelsberg (HS Potsdam-B.)	108	Emden, Johannes a Lasco Library	53	Reutlingen, eks Library Suppliers GmbH	81
Media Centre at Neckarsulm (D. Strauss)	109	Erfurt, University and Research Library Erfurt/Gotha	21	Schwerin, Regional Library of Mecklenburg-West Pomerania	107
Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm Centre. Main Library of the Humboldt University in Berlin (M. Bulaty)	109	Frankfurt am Main, City Library Book Bus	58	Sigmaringen, Court Library of the House of Hohenzollern	13
University and Regional Library of Thuringia in Jena (P. Scheene, Universität Jena)	110	Frankfurt am Main, German National Library	39, 71	Stuttgart, Württemberg Regional Library	13, 104
University Library of Regensburg (K. Hoibl)	111	Friedrichshafen on Lake Constance, City Library	106	Tübingen, University Library	93
Public Library of the local community of Neufahrn (J. Feist, ekz)	112	Göttingen, Lower Saxony State and University Library	89, 116	Ulm, City Library	8
Centre for Book Preservation in Leipzig (C. Seelbach)	114	Gütersloh, City Library	83	Weimar, Duchess Anna Amalia Library	32, 102
The digitization centres in Munich (MDZ)	115	Halberstadt, Heinrich Heine City Library	78	Westerstede, City Library	61
The Göttingen Digitization Centre (GDZ)	116	Halle, Library of the Francke Foundations	47	Wolfenbüttel, Duke August Library	12, 94
Jürgen Seefeldt, Autor	118	Halle, University and Regional Library	16	Würzburg, City Library	96
Ludger Syré, Autor (B. Ehlig)	118	Hamm, Central Library, Hamm City Libraries	60		
Janet MacKenzie, Translator	118	Hanover, Regional Library of Lower Saxony	45		
		Hanover, University Library/Technical Information Library	104		
		Heidelberg, University Library	49		
		Hildesheim, Cathedral Library	11		
		Jakarta, Indonesia, Goethe Institute	84		
		Jena, University and Regional Library of Thuringia	110		
		Karlsruhe, Baden Regional Library	91		
		Karlsruhe, University Library KIT	50		
		Karlsruhe, bookshop	34		
		Kiel, German National Library of Economics	52		
		Koblenz, City Library Book Bus	58		
		Königswinter, Study Centre of the CJD Christophorus School	64		
		Landau, City Library	55		
		Leipzig, Centre for Book Preservation	114		
		Leipzig, former Deutsche Bücherei	17		
		Leipzig, German Music Archive	40		
		Leipzig, University Library	20		
		Lübeck, Library of the Hanseatic City of Lübeck	18		
		Marbach, German Literature Archive	52		
		Munich, Bavarian State Library	43, 115		
		Munich, Historicum of the University Library	48		
		Munich, International Youth Library	63		
		Neckarsulm, Media Centre	109		
		Neufahrn, Public Library	112		
		Oldenburg, Regional Library	45		
		Ottobeuren, Library of the Benedictine Monastery	14		
		Potsdam-Babelsberg, Library of the Konrad Wolf University of Film and Television	108		
		Potsdam, City and Regional Library	18		
		Regensburg, Court Library of the Prince of Thurn and Taxis	38		

## Alphabetical Index of Pictures by Location

Amorbach, Library of the Prince of Leiningen	103
Augsburg, City Library	61
Augsburg, State and City Library	46
Aurich, Regional Library	28
Bamberg, State Library	15
Berlin, Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm Centre	109
Berlin, Library of the German Parliament	54
Berlin, Philology Library of the Free University	87
Berlin, Reichstag (Parliament) Library	17
Berlin, State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage	14, 19, 42, 90
Bernburg/Saale, City Library	63
Biberach an der Riss, Art Library	56
Bochum, University Library	30
Bremen, City Library	66
Burghausen, Company works library at Wacker Chemie AG	67
Cologne, German National Library of Medicine (Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Medizin)	44
Cottbus, IKMZ BTU	9
Dortmund, City and Regional Library	55
Dresden, Saxonian Regional Library – State and University Library of Dresden	92
Düsseldorf, City Libraries	69

## Winners of the National Library Prize „Library of the Year“

2000: Halberstadt City Library (Saxony Anhalt)
2001: Johannes a Lasco Library, Emden (Lower Saxony)
2002: State and University Library of Göttingen (Lower Saxony)
2003: Würzburg City Library (Bavaria)
2004: Dresden City Libraries (Saxony)
2005: Hamm City Libraries (North Rhine-Westphalia)
2006: Cottbus University Library (IKMZ (Brandenburg))
2007: Prison Library of the Münster Penitentiary (North Rhine-Westphalia)
2008: Bavarian State Library (Munich)
2009: City Library of Biberach an der Riß (Baden-Württemberg)
2010: Constance University Library (Baden-Württemberg)

## Further Reading (A Selection)

### Books and Yearbooks

<b>Aufbruch als Ziel – BID und „Bibliothek 2007“:</b> Zum Abschluss der sechsjährigen Amtszeit Georg Ruppel als Sprecher von Bibliothek & Information Deutschland/Hg.: Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V. – Hildesheim u.a.: Olms, 2006. – 249 p.: Ill.
<b>Bau- und Nutzungsplanung von Bibliotheken und Archiven: Ersatz für DIN-Fachbericht 13: 1998/DIN Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V. – Berlin [u.a.]: Beuth,</b>



2009. – 132 p.: graf. Darst. – (DIN-Fachbericht; 13).
- Bericht zur Lage der Bibliotheken 2010/**  
Deutscher Bibliotheksverband.  
Jan-Pieter Barbian... – Berlin: dbv, 2010. 12 p.
- Bibliothek 2007:**  
Strategiekonzepte/Bertelsmann Stiftung; Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände (Hrsg.). Von Gabriele Beger u.a. – 3. Aufl. – Gütersloh: Verl. Bertelsmann Stiftung, 2004. – 40 p.
- Bibliotheken '93:**  
Strukturen, Aufgaben, Positionen/ Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände. – Berlin: Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut; Göttingen: Niedersächsische Staats- u. Univ.-Bibliothek, 1994. – VI, 182 p.: ILL.
- Bibliotheken heute!:**  
Best Practice bei Planung, Bau und Ausstattung/hrsg. von Petra Hauke u. Klaus Ulrich Werner. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2011. – 320 p.: ILL.
- Bibliotheken und Informationsgesellschaft in Deutschland:**  
eine Einführung/Engelbert Plassmann, Hermann Rösch, Jürgen Seefeldt, Konrad Umlauf. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2006. – X, 333 p.
- Bibliotheken 2040:**  
die Zukunft neu entwerfen/Red. Rob Bruijnzeels u. Nicole van Tiggele. Übers. von Uta Klaassen. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2003. – 83 p.: ILL., maps
- Bibliothekspolitik in Ost und West:**  
Geschichte und Gegenwart des Deutschen Bibliotheksverbandes/hrsg. von Georg Ruppelt. – Frankfurt am Main: Klostermann, 1998. – VI, 322 p.; (Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie: Sonderhefte; 72).
- Berufsbild 2000 – Bibliotheken und Bibliothekare im Wandel/**  
erarb. von der Arbeitsgruppe "Gemeinsames Berufsbild" der BDB e.V. Unter Leitung von Ute Krauß-Leichert. – 2., unveränd. Nachdr. der dt. Fassung, erg. um die engl. Version. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick, 2000. – 125 p.
- Bruhn, Manfred:**  
Qualitätsmanagement für Dienstleistungen: Grundlagen, Konzepte, Methoden. – 7., überarb. u. erw. Aufl. – Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer, 2008. – 617 p.
- Buch und Buchhandel in Zahlen/**  
hrsg. vom Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels e.V. – Frankfurt a.M.: MVB Marketing- u. Verlags-service des Buchhandels. – 2010. – 128 p.: ILL., tables, maps. – Publ. annually
- Buzás, Ladislaus:**  
Deutsche Bibliotheksgeschichte des Mittelalters/Ladislaus Buzás. – Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1975. – 191 p.; (Elemente des Buch- und Bibliothekswesens; 1).
- Buzás, Ladislaus:**  
Deutsche Bibliotheksgeschichte der Neuzeit (1500–1800)/Ladislaus Buzás. – Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1976. – 203 p.; (Elemente des Buch- und Bibliothekswesens; 2).
- Buzás, Ladislaus:**  
Deutsche Bibliotheksgeschichte der neuesten Zeit (1800–1945)/Ladislaus Buzás. – Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1978. – 215 p.; (Elemente des Buch- und Bibliothekswesens; 3)
- Einundzwanzig (21) gute Gründe für gute Bibliotheken/**  
hrsg. von der BID – Bibliothek & Information Deutschland. Konzept und Inhalt: Gabriele Beger u.a. Text: Anne Buhrfeind. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2009. – 28 p.
- Entscheidungssammlung zum Bibliotheksrecht/**  
hrsg. von der Rechtskommission des Deutschen Bibliotheksinstituts u.a. Erarbeitet von: Jürgen Christoph Gödan u.a. 2., überarb. u. erw. Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2003. – 656 p.
- Erfolgreiches Management von Bibliotheken und Informations-einrichtungen:**  
Fachratgeber für die Bibliotheksleitung und Bibliothekare/Hrsg.: Hans-Christoph Hobohm, Konrad Umlauf. – Hamburg: Verl. Dashöfer, 2002. – 700 p.– Loose-leaf edition
- Ewert, Gisela; Umstätter, Walther:**  
Lehrbuch der Bibliotheksverwaltung/auf d. Grundlage d. Werkes von Wilhelm Krabbe u. Wilhelm Martin Luther völlig neu bearb. von Gisela Ewert u. Walther Umstätter. – Stuttgart: Hiersemann, 1997. – xv, 204 p.
- Gantert, Klaus; Hacker, Rupert:**  
Bibliothekarisches Grundwissen. – 8., vollst. neu bearb. u. erw. Auflage. – München: Saur, 2008. – 414 p.: ILL.
- Gaus, Wilhelm:**  
Berufe im Informationswesen: ein Wegweiser zur Ausbildung; Archiv, Bibliothek, Buchwissenschaft, Information und Dokumentation, Medizinische Dokumentation, Medizinische Informatik, Computerlinguistik, Museum/Wilhelm Gaus. – 5., vollständig überarbeitete Aufl. – Berlin [u.a.]: Springer, 2002. – 310 p.
- Grundlagen der praktischen Information und Dokumentation/**  
Ein Handbuch zur Einführung in die fachliche Informationsarbeit/Rainer Kuhlen u.a. [Hrsg.]. Begr. von Klaus Laisiepen. – 5., völl. neu gefasste Ausg. – München: Saur, 2004. – XLVIII, 910 p.  
Vol. 1: Handbuch zur Einführung in die Informationswissenschaft und -praxis  
Vol. 2: Glossar
- Gutachtensammlung zum Bibliotheksrecht:**  
Gutachten, Stellungnahmen, Empfehlungen. – Red.: Jürgen Christoph Gödan. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2002. – XIV, 618 p. (Bibliotheksrecht; Bd. 1)
- Handbuch Bibliothek 2.0/**  
Hrsg. Julia Bergmann, Patrick Danowski. – Berlin, New York: de Gruyter Saur, 2010. – 392 p.
- Handbuch der Bibliotheken Deutschland, Österreich, Schweiz.**  
16. Aufl. – Berlin: de Gruyter, 2010.
- 100. Deutscher Bibliothekartag Berlin – Festschrift/**  
Im Auftr. des Vereins Deutscher Bibliothekare (VDB) u. des Berufsverbands Information Bibliothek (BIB) hrsg. von Felicitas Hundhausen, Daniela Lülfig u. Wilfried Sühl-Stromenger. – Hildesheim: Olms, 2011 – 258 p.
- Jahrbuch der Deutschen Bibliotheken/**  
hrsg. vom Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz. – Bd. 63 (2009/2010). – 580 p.– Published biennially.
- Jahrbuch der Öffentlichen Bibliotheken/**  
hrsg. vom Berufsverband Bibliothek Information e.V. Bearb. von Petra Hauke. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, Ausg. 2010/11. – 2010. – 348 p.– Published biennially.
- Jochum, Uwe:**  
Geschichte der abendländischen Bibliotheken. – Darmstadt: Primus 2009. – 160 p.: ILL.

- Jochum, Uwe:**  
Kleine Bibliotheksgeschichte/von Uwe Jochum. – 3., verb. u. erw. Aufl. – Stuttgart: Reclam, 2007. – 280 p.; (Universal-Bibliothek; Nr.-17667).
- Lux, Claudia; Sühl-Strohmeier, Wilfried:**  
Teaching Library in Deutschland: Vermittlung von Informations- und Medienkompetenz als Kernaufgabe für Öffentliche und Wissenschaftliche Bibliotheken. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick, 2004. – 248 p.: ILL. (BIT online innovativ; 9)
- Die moderne Bibliothek:**  
ein Compendium der Bibliotheksverwaltung/hrg. von Rudolf Frankenberger und Klaus Haller. – München: Saur, 2004. – 449 p.
- Plassmann, Engelbert; Seefeldt, Jürgen:**  
Das Bibliothekswesen der Bundesrepublik Deutschland: ein Handbuch/von Engelbert Plassmann und Jürgen Seefeldt. – 3., völlig neubearbeitete Auflage des durch Gisela von Busse und Horst Ernestus begründeten Werkes. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz 1999. – XII, 510 p.: ILL., maps
- Politik für Bibliotheken:**  
die Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände (BDB) im Gespräch; Birgit Dankert zum Ende ihrer Amtszeit als Sprecherin der BDB/hrg. von Georg Ruppelt. – München: Saur, 2000. – 208 p.
- Rechtsvorschriften für die Bibliotheksarbeit/**  
Deutscher Bibliotheksverband (Hg.). – 5., überarb. u. erw. Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2009. – XIV, 832 p. (Bibliothekrecht; 3)
- Die Regionalbibliographie im digitalen Zeitalter:**  
Deutschland und seine Nachbarländer/hrg. von Ludger Syré und Heidrun Wiesenmüller. – Frankfurt a.M.: Klostermann, 2006. – 426 p.; (Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie: Sonderbände; 90).
- Regionalbibliotheken in Deutschland:**  
mit einem Ausblick auf Österreich und die Schweiz/hrg. von Bernd Hagenau. – Frankfurt am Main: Klostermann, 2000. – 467 p., mp.; (Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie: Sonderheft; 78).
- Rösch, Hermann:**  
Academic Libraires und Cyberinfrastructure: Das System wissenschaftlicher Kommunikation zu Beginn des 21. Jahrhunderts. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick, 2008. – 127 p., Abb. – (BIT online – Innovativ; 21).
- Seidel, Stefanie:**  
Die schönsten Räume, die wertvollsten Sammlungen; Deutschland, Österreich, Schweiz. – München: Callwey, 1995. – 191 p., zahlr. ILL.
- Spezialbibliotheken in Deutschland/**  
Red. Petra Hauke. Unter Mitarb. von Gisela Bartz. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 1996–2002. Bd. 1–5.
- Sühl-Strohmeier, Wilfried:**  
Digitale Welt und Wissenschaftliche Bibliothek: Informationspraxis im Wandel. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2008. – 296 p. (Bibliothekswesen in Einzeldarstellungen).
- Umlauf, Konrad:**  
Bestandsaufbau an öffentlichen Bibliotheken/Konrad Umlauf. – Frankfurt a.M.: Klostermann, 1997. – 413 p. – (Das Bibliothekswesen in Einzeldarstellungen).
- Umlauf, Konrad:**  
Medienkunde/Konrad Umlauf unter Mitarbeit von Daniella Sarnowski. – 2., aktual. u. neu gefasste Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2006. – 350 p. – (Bibliothekswesen in Einzeldarstellungen).
- Umlauf, Konrad:**  
Moderne Buchkunde/Konrad Umlauf. – 2., aktual. u. neu gefasste Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2005. – 191 p. – (Bibliothekswesen in Einzeldarstellungen).
- Umstätter, Walther:**  
Einführung in die Katalogkunde: vom Zettelkatalog zur Suchmaschine/von Walther Umstätter u. Roland Wagner-Döbler. – 3. Aufl. d. Werkes von Karl Löffler, voll. neu bearb. – Stuttgart: Hiersemann, 2005. – XI, 171 p.: ILL.
- Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare 1900–2000:**  
Festschrift/hrg. von Engelbert Plassmann u. Ludger Syré. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2000. – 408 p.
- Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare 1900–2000:**  
Bibliographie und Dokumentation/zusammengest. von Felicitas Hundhausen. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2004. – XX, 541 p.
- Wie viele Bibliotheken brauchen wir?/**  
hrg. von Rolf Busch. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2004. – 294 p. (Beiträge zur bibliothekarischen Weiterbildung; 17).
- Wissenschaftskommunikation im Netzwerk der Bibliotheken:**  
mit Beitr. von Walther Umstätter u.a. – Berlin: BibSpider, 2005. – 195 p.: ILL.
- Zugang für alle:**  
Soziale Bibliotheksarbeit in Deutschland. – Hrg. Ben Kaden und Maxi Kindling. – Berlin: BibSpider, 2007. – 273 p.

## Journals

- ABI-Technik:** Zeitschrift für Automation, Bau und Technik im Archiv-, Bibliotheks- und Informationswesen. – München: Verlag Neuer Merkur. Published quarterly.
- Auskunft:** Zeitschrift für Bibliothek, Archiv und Information in Norddeutschland/hrg. im Auftr. des Landesverbandes Hamburg im dbv. – Nordhausen: Bautz. Published quarterly.
- Bibliothek:** Forschung und Praxis. – Berlin u.a.: de Gruyter Saur. Published every four months.
- BiblioTheke:** Zeitschrift für katholische Bücherei- und Medienarbeit/hrg. vom Borromäusverein. – Bonn: BV. Published quarterly.
- Bibliotheken heute/hrg.** vom Landesbibliothekszentrum Rheinland-Pfalz. – Koblenz u.a.: LBZ. Published quarterly.
- Bibliotheksdienst/Redaktion,** Herstellung und Vertrieb: Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin. Published monthly.
- Bibliotheksforum Bayern:** BFB/Hrg.: Bibliotheksverbund Bayern, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek. – München: BVB. Published every four months.
- B.I.T.-Online:** Zeitschrift für Bibliothek, Information und Technologie mit aktueller Internet-Präsenz. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick. Published quarterly.
- BuB:** Forum für Bibliothek und Information; Fachzeitschrift des BIB e.V., Berufsverband Information Bibliothek. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen. Ten issues per year.
- Buchprofile: Medienempfehlungen für die Büchereiarbeit/**  
Hrg.: Borromäusverein e.V. Bonn, St. Michaelsbund. – Bonn: BV. Published quarterly.
- Dialog mit Bibliotheken/Deutsche Nationalbibliothek.** – Frankfurt am Main: DNB. Published every four months.

**Der evangelische Buchberater:**  
Zeitschrift für Buch- und Bücherei-  
arbeit/Hrsg.: eliport Ev. Literatur-  
portal. – Göttingen: VEB.  
Published quarterly.

**Information – Wissenschaft  
und Praxis:** IWR/Hrsg. von  
der Deutschen Gesellschaft für  
Informationswissenschaft und  
Informationspraxis. – Wiesbaden:  
Dinges und Frick.  
Published quarterly.

**LIES – Lesen, Informieren, Erleben  
in der Schulbibliothek:** Arbeits-  
hilfen und Informationen für  
Schulbibliotheken; eine Schriften-  
reihe für die Arbeit in den zentralen  
Schulbibliotheken des Landes  
Rheinland-Pfalz/Hrsg. von der  
Kommission „Zentrale Schulbiblio-  
thek“. – Mainz: KZS. Published  
twice a year.

**MB:** Mitteilungsblatt der Bibliotheken  
in Niedersachsen und Sachsen-  
Anhalt/Hrsg.: Arbeitsgemeinschaft  
der Bibliotheken in Niedersachsen;  
Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Biblio-  
theken in Sachsen-Anhalt. – Han-  
nover: Landesbibliothek.  
Published quarterly.

**ProLibris:** Mitteilungsblatt/hrsg.  
vom Verband der Bibliotheken des  
Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen und  
den Bezirksregierungen. – Bottrop:  
Pomp. Published every four  
months.

**Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen  
und Bibliographie:** vereinigt mit  
Zentralblatt für Bibliothekswesen;  
ZfBB: Organ des wissenschaftlichen  
Bibliothekswesens. – Frankfurt am  
Main: Klostermann.  
Published every two months.

## Internet Addresses

Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbiblio-  
theken (ASpB)  
www.aspb.de

Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Verbund-  
systeme (AGV)  
www.ag-verbund.de

Arbeitsgemeinschaft Sammlung Deut-  
scher Drucke (AG SSD)  
www.ag-sdd.de

BAM-Portal  
www.bam-Portal.de

Bayerische Staatsbibliothek (BSB)  
www.bsb-muenchen.de

Bertelsmann Stiftung  
www.bertelsmann-stiftung.de

Berufsverband Information Bibliothek  
(BIB)  
www.bib-info.de

Bibliothek & Information Deutschland  
e.V. (BID)  
www.bideutschland.de

Bibliothek & Information International  
(BII)  
www.bi-international.de

Bibliotheksindex (BIX)  
www.bix-bibliotheksindex.de

Bibliotheksportal  
www.bibliotheksportal.de

Bibliotheksservice-Zentrum Baden-  
Württemberg (BSZ)  
www.bsz-bw.de

Bibliotheksverbund Bayern  
www.bib-bvb.de

Bielefeld Academic Search-Engine  
(BASE)  
www.base-search.de

Borromäusverein e.V. (BV)  
www.borromaeusverein.de

Büro der Europäischen Bibliotheks-  
verbände (EBLIDA)  
www.eblida.org

Conference of European National  
Libraries (CENL)  
www.cenl.org

Datenbank-Infosystem  
www.bibliothek.uni-regensburg.  
de/dbinfo

Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik (DBS)  
www.bibliotheksstatistik.de

Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft –  
Wissenschaftliche Literaturver-  
sorgungs- und Informationssysteme  
www.dfg.de/lis

Deutsche Gesellschaft für In-  
formationswissenschaft und  
Informationspraxis (DGI)  
www.dgi-info.de

Deutsche Internetbibliothek (DIB)  
www.internetbibliothek.de

Deutsche Nationalbibliothek (DNB)  
www.dnb.de

Deutscher Bibliotheksverband (dbv)  
www.bibliotheksverband.de

Deutscher Bildungsserver  
www.bildungsserver.de

Deutsches Informationszentrum für  
Medizinische Dokumentation und  
Information (DIMDI)  
www.dimdi.de

DigiAuskunft  
www.hbz-nrw.de/angebote/digi-  
auskunft

Digitale Bibliothek  
www.digibib.net

DiViBib GmbH  
www.divibib.de

ekz-Bibliotheksservice GmbH  
www.ekz.de

Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek  
www.bibliothek.uni-regensburg.  
de/ezeit

Fachstellen-Server  
www.fachstellen.de

Fortbildungsportal für Bibliothek und  
Information  
www.wissenbringtweiter.de

Gemeinsamer Bibliotheksverbund  
www.gbv.de

Goethe-Institut  
www.goethe.de

Hessisches Bibliotheksinforma-  
tions-  
system  
www.hebis.de

Hochschulbibliothekszentrum NRW  
www.hbz-nrw.de

IFLA-Nationalkomitee Deutschland  
www.ifla-deutschland.de

International Federation of Library  
Associations and Institutions  
www.ifla.org

Karlsruher Virtueller Katalog  
www.ubka.uni-karlsruhe.de/kvk.  
html

Kirchlicher Verbundkatalog  
www.kivk.de

Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken  
www.bibliotheksportal.de

Kooperativer Bibliotheksverbund  
Berlin-Brandenburg  
www.kobv.de

Sammlung Deutscher Drucke  
www.ag-sdd.de

Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin  
www.sbb.spk-berlin.de

subito  
www.subito-doc.de

Vascoda  
www.vascoda.de

Verband der Bibliotheken des Landes  
NRW  
www.vbnw.de

Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare  
www.vdb-online.org

Virtuelle Deutsche Landesbiblio-  
graphie  
www.landesbibliographie.de

Zeitschriftendatenbank  
www.zeitschriftendatenbank.de

## Subject Index (Names, Institutions, Abbrevia- tions)

AACR2 = Anglo-American Cataloging Rules	97
Academic and research libraries	20, 22, 88
Academic Linkshare – ALS	94
Adult education	30
Adult education centers (VHS)	30
Akademie für Leseförderung	33
ALS = Academic Linkshare	94
America Memorial Library	37, 58
Anglo-American Cataloging Rules (AACR2)	97

## APPENDICES

Anne Frank Shoah Library	40	Book Trade Marketing and Publisher Service (MVB)	40	DAISY	65
Archivist	69	Borromäus Society (BV)	18, 62	Database Info-System (DBIS)	116
Art libraries (Artothek)	56	Börsenblatt des Deutschen Buchhandels	34	DataCite	44
ASpB = Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken	78	Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels	34	DBI = Deutsches Bibliotheks- institut	22
Association of Certified Librarians in Academic and Research Libraries (VdDB)	79	BSB = Bayerische Staatsbibliothek	41, 43, 94	DBIS = Database Info-System	116
Association of German Librarians (VDB)	80	BuB = Buch und Bibliothek (Zeitschrift)	80	DBK = Deutsche Bibliothekskonferenz	75, 90
Association of Information and Library Professionals (BIB)	79, 95	Buch und Bibliothek Forum für Bibliothek und Information	80	DBS = Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik	55, 60, 79
Association of Librarians and Library Assistants (VBA)	79	Bund-Länder-Initiative zur Beschleu- nigung der Literatur- und Informationsdienste	105	dbv = Deutscher Bibliotheksverband	76
Association of the Libraries of the Federal State of North Rhine-Westphalia (VdBNW)	77	BV = Borromäusverein	18	DDB = Deutsche Digitale Bibliothek	114
Authority file	100	Cathedral libraries	11	DDB = Die Deutsche Bibliothek	38
BA, Besprechungen und Annotationen	95	CENL = Conference of European National Librarians	88	Deacidification	41
Bachelor degree courses	8, 31, 50, 69, 72	Center for Book Conservation	41	Departmental libraries	49
BAM gateway	98	Central and Regional Library Berlin (ZLB)	58	Deutsche Akademie der Naturforscher Leopoldina	53
Basic Law (Grundgesetz – GG)	23	Central Index of Digitized Imprints (ZVDD)	98, 114	Deutsche Bücherei	16, 18, 20, 38, 40, 41, 94
BAT = Bundesangestelltentarif	70	Central Subject Libraries	19, 44, 67	Deutsche Internetbibliothek	106
Bavarian State Library (BSB)	41, 43, 94	Chamber of Commerce (Industrie- und Handelskammer)	72	Deutsche National- bibliothek	20, 38, 39, 94, 115
BDB = Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände	75	Children's libraries	62	Deutscher Bibliothekartag	80, 81
BEA = Bibliotheksentwicklungs- agentur	84	Church libraries	54	Deutscher Dokumentartag	86
Berlin City Library	37	City libraries	17, 56	Deutscher Städtetag	90
Bertelsmann Foundation	64, 83	Civil service	70	DFG = Deutsche Forschungs- gemeinschaft	25, 42, 87, 91, 100, 116
BIB = Berufsverband Information Bibliothek	79, 95	Classic Foundation of Weimar	37	DGI = Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informationswissenschaft und Informationspraxis	67, 78, 85
Bibliographies of early imprints	101	Codex	12	Die Deutsche Bibliothek (DDB)	18, 38
Bibliotheca Hertziana (Rome)	54	Collection of Exile Literature	40	DigiAuskunft	106
Bibliotheca Palatina (Heidelberg)	13	Collection of German Imprints	41, 42, 43, 94	DigiBib = Digital Library NRW	98
Bibliotheken '93	90	Collective wage agreements	70	Digital library	25, 48
Bibliotheksdienst (journal)	22, 76	Combination library	110	Digital Library NRW (DigiBib)	98
Bibliotheksplan '73	20, 75, 90	Commissioner of the Federal Government for Culture and Media (BKM)	76	Digitization	95, 113
BIB-OPUS online document server	80	Company works libraries	66	DIMDI = Deutsches Institut für Medizinische Dokumentation und Information	44
Bibweb	82	Comprehensive schools (Gesamtschule)	64	Diocesan libraries	54
BID = Bibliothek und Information Deutschland	75	Comprehensive schools (Gesamtschulen)	27	Distance learning	30
BII = Bibliothek und Information International	76	Conference of Vice-Chancellors (HRK)	27	DiViBib	82
BI-International	86	Consortia	91	DMA = Deutsches Musikarchiv	39
BIX = Bibliotheksindex	83	Consortium for the Collection of German Imprints	41	DNB = Deutsche National- bibliographie	17, 97
BKM = Beauftragter der Bundes- regierung für Kultur und Medien	25, 76	Continuing professional education	29, 74	DNB = Deutsche Nationalbibliothek	38, 39
Blu-ray	29	Cooperation in subject indexing	96	Documentalist	69
BMBF = Bundesministerium für Bildung und Forschung	25, 67, 94	Cooperative information services	106	Documentation centers	67
Bologna Process	31, 33	Cooperative State Universities	32	Document delivery services	97
Book buses	58	Copyright law	33, 87	Dreiländerkatalog	99
Book conservation	41, 95	Council libraries (Ratsbücherei)	46	Duale Hochschule	32
Book Halls Hamburg	38	Council libraries (Ratsbüchereien)	12	Dual system	28
Book production	34	Council of Europe	88	Duchess Anna Amalia Library	21, 37, 47
Book review cooperation (LK)	95	County libraries	55	Duke August Library	47, 94, 101
Book trade	33	Court libraries (Hofbibliotheken)	13	E-audio	82
		Cultural autonomy	33	EBLIDA = European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations	87
		Cultural autonomy, local	25	E-books	82, 108

ECIA = European Council of Information Associations	86	FIZ = Fachinformationszentren	67	German Research Foundation (DFG)	25, 42, 99, 116
EconBiz	45	FIZ Karlsruhe Leibniz Institute of Information Infrastructure	67	German Science Museum	53
EconDesk	45	Foundation of the Central and State Library Berlin	37	German Society for Information Science and Information Practice – DGI	67
Education and Support Initiative. IZBB	65	Foundation of the Germanic National Museum	37	German University Association for Information Science (HI)	85
Einheitsbücherei	17	Framework Agreement on Research Funding	25	GI = Gesellschaft Informatik	85
ekz-Bibliotheksservice GmbH	81, 95	Francke Foundations	37, 47	GI = Goethe-Institut	84
E-Learning	82	Friedrich Ebert Foundation	53	Global Trade Item Number (GTIN)	35
Electronic books	108	Further education	29	GND = Gemeinsame Normdatei	96
Electronic journals	108	Geh, Hans-Peter	86	Goethe Institute (GI)	54, 84
Electronic Periodicals Library (EZB)	99, 116	German Adult Education Association	30	Google Print	114
Eliport – Das evangelische Literaturportal e.V. (Göttingen)	62	German Archaeological Institute	54	Graphics libraries (Graphothek)	56
E-paper	82	German Association for Information Science and Information Practice (DGI)	78, 85	Guidelines for Patients' Libraries	66
EUCLID = European Association for Library and Information Education and Research	78	German Association of Special Libraries (ASpB)	53, 77	Gutenberg, Johannes	12
Europeana	8, 88, 114	German Association of Towns and Cities (Deutscher Städtetag)	79, 90	GW = Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke	101
European Association for Library and Information Education and Research (EUCLID)	78	German Book and Writing Museum	40	Gymnasium (secondary school)	27, 64
European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations (EBLIDA)	87	German Books in Print (VLB)	34	Hall library (Saalbibliothek)	13
European Council of Information Associations (ECIA)	86	German Cancer Research Center	53	Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Austria	103
EZB = Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek	99, 101, 116	German Central Library of Economics (ZBW)	37	Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Europa	103
Fachinformationszentren (FIZ)	25	German Digital Library (DDB)	114	Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Germany	102
Faculty libraries	49	German Exile Archive	40	Hauptschule (secondary school)	27
FAMI = Fachangestellter für Medien- und Informationsdienste	28, 69, 72	German Federal Armed Forces (Bundeswehr)	66	HBFG = Hochschulbauförderungsgesetz	31
Federal Association of German Library and Information Associations (BID)	75	German Historical Institute	54	Higher public service (Höherer Dienst)	80
Federal Chancellor (Bundeskanzler)	24	German Institute for Japanese Studies	54	HI = Hochschulverband Informationswissenschaft	85
Federal Collective Tariff Agreement for the Public Service – TVÖD	70	German Institute of Medical Documentation and Information – DIMDI	44	HÖB = Hamburger Bücherhallen	38
Federal Commission for Culture and Media (BKM)	25	German Internet Library (DIB)	106	Hoffmann, Gustav	86
Federal Council (Bundesrat)	24	German Libraries – Award for Journalism	78	Hospital libraries	65
Federal Employees' Tariff Agreement (BAT)	70	German Library Association (dbv)	76	HRG = Hochschulrahmengesetz	31
Federal Ministry of Education and Research (BMBWF)	25, 67, 94	German Library Conference (DBK)	75, 90	HRK = Hochschulrektorenkonferenz	27
Federal Parliament (Bundestag)	24	German Library Congress	76, 81	Humboldt University Berlin	73
Federal President (Bundespräsident)	24	German Library Institute (DBI)	22, 78	Hybrid library	112, 113
Federal Programme for the Promotion of Information and Documentation	66	German Library Statistics (DBS)	55, 60, 79	ID = Informationsdienst	95
Federal State Collective Tariff Agreement (TV-L)	70	German Literature Archive	53	IFLA National Committee	86
Federal States (Bundesländer)	23	German Music Archive – DMA	39	Incunabula Short Titel Catalogue (ISTC)	101
Feel-good library	110	German National Bibliography	40	Infodesk	98
Filming (preservation)	95	German National Bibliography (DNB)	17, 97	InfoDesk	106
Fine arts and music conservatories	30	German National Library Act	39	Information broker	69
		German National Library		Information literacy	113
		(DNB)	20, 36, 38, 39, 94, 115	Information manager	69
		German National Library of Economics (ZBW)	45	Informationsdienst (ID)	82, 95
		German National Library of Medicine ZB MED (Bonn and Cologne)	44	Information society	116
		German National Museum	53	Information • Wissenschaft und Praxis (journal)	85
				Initiative Scholarship	85
				Inner Mission	18
				Institute for Book and Manuscript Restoration	44
				Institute of Art History (Florence)	54
				Institute of Library Science Berlin	73
				Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge (PI)	15

## APPENDICES

Intercultural library work	78	Library of the German Patent Office	51	Prison libraries	58, 66
Interlibrary lending	103	Library of the Year (award)	78	Professional associations	74
International cooperation	86	Library suppliers	81	Professional Conference of German Library Service Centers	61
International cultural cooperation	84	Life-long learning	74	Pro Libris (journal)	77
International Frankfurt Book Fair	34	Linked Open Data System	116	Prussian Instructions (PI)	15
Inter Nationes	84	LIS = Wissenschaftliche Literaturversorgungs- und Informationssysteme	92	Prussian State Library, Berlin	18
ISBN	43	LK = Lektoratskooperation	95	Prussian Union Catalog (Preußischer Gesamtkatalog)	15
IuK = IuK-Initiative Wissenschaft	85	Local Government Association for Municipal Administration	25	Public libraries	19, 55, 110
IZBB = Initiative Bildung und Betreuung	65	Long term archiving	115	Public library spending	60
Jahrbuch der deutschen Bibliotheken (Yearbook of German Libraries)	81	Lux, Claudia	7–9, 86	Public library system	58
Johannes a Lasco Library	54	MAB format	97	Public service	70
Karl Preusker Medal	76	MALIS = Master of Library and Information Science	72	Publishers	34
Karlsruhe Virtual Catalog (KVK)	98	MARC 21	97	Question Point	106
KMK = Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder	27, 79	Master of Library and Information Science (MALIS)	72	Rahmenvereinbarung Forschungsförderung	25
KNB = Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken	79	Max Planck Institute	54	RAK-WB = Regeln für die alphabetische Katalogisierung in wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken	97
Kopal = Kooperativer Aufbau eines Langzeitarchivs digitaler Informationen	115	MDZ = Münchener Digitalisierungszentrum	44	RDA = Resource Description and Access	8, 97
KVK = Karlsruher Virtueller Katalog	98	Media Centers	28	Recommendations for the Development of Academic and Research Libraries	89
Latin American Institute	53	Media industry	29	Regeln für die alphabetische Katalogisierung in wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken (RAK-WB)	97
League of European Research Libraries (LIBER)	88	Medibus	65	Regeln für die Schlagwortkatalogisierung (RSWK)	97
Lectern Library (Pultbibliothek)	13	Medical libraries	66	Regional bibliographies	46
Legal deposit	39, 45, 115	MEDPILOT	44	Regional libraries	45
Leipzig Congress on Information and Libraries	86	Mobile libraries	58	Regional network systems	97
Lektoratskooperation	82	Monastic libraries	11, 54	Resale price maintenance	34
LIBER = League of European Research Libraries	88	Munich Digitization Center (MDZ)	44	Research Center for Military History	53
Libraries and Documentation Standards Committee (NABD)	79	Music libraries	57	Research Center Jülich	53
Libraries for the blind	65	MVB = Marketing und Verlagsservice des Buchhandels	40	Research libraries	47
Libraries of higher education institutions	48	NABD = Normenausschuss Bibliotheks- und Dokumentationswesen	79	Research Library of Gotha	47
Library agency	111	National library	16	RFID = Radio Frequency Identification	83
Library and Information International (BII)	76	National Library Prize	78	RSWK = Regeln für den Schlagwortkatalog	97
Library computer centers	98	National licence	93	Rural Central Libraries (Ländliche Zentralbibliothek)	20
Library Development Agency (BEA)	84	National literature provision	92	Salary scales	71
Library discount agreement	34	National Periodicals Database (ZDB)	99	Sammlung Deutscher Drucke	42, 43, 94
Library Expertise Network (knb)	22, 79	Nestor Network Expertise in Long-term Storage and Long-term Accessibility of Digital Resources	115	Scholars' libraries (Gelehrtenbibliothek)	12
Library Index (BIX)	83	Network library	110	School libraries	63
Library networks	97	Nordelbisch Church Library	54	School Libraries Office (Schulbibliothekarische Arbeitsstelle)	111
Library of the Academy of Fine Arts Berlin	51	Official publications	51	School Library Service Centers	64
Library of the Federal Constitutional Court	52	One Person Libraries (OPL)	53	School system	27
Library of the Federal Office of Statistics	51	Onleihe	57, 82	Search engines	115
Library of the Federal Supreme Court	52	Open access movement	114	Semantic Web	44, 97, 116
Library of the Foreign Office	51	OPL = One Personal Library	53	Senate Library Berlin	37, 51
Library of the German Parliament	51	Parliamentary libraries	51	Single-tier library system	49
		Patients – library	65	Social library work	65
		Pay-per-view	45, 68, 101	Social software	115
		Photo and Film Service Units (Bildstellen)	28	Special libraries	51
		PISA studies	33, 64		

Special Subject Field Collection-building Programme (Sondersammelgebietsplan)	91	VD 17 = Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachbereich erschienenen Drucke des 17. Jahrhunderts	101
Special user groups	65	VD 18 = Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachraum erschienenen Drucke des 18. Jahrhunderts	102
Standardization Committee	97	VDB-Mitteilungen	81
Standing Conference of the Cultural Ministers (KMK)	27, 79	VdBNW = Verband der Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen	77
State and University Library Göttingen	115	VDB = Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare	80
State libraries	45	VdDB = Verein der Diplom-Bibliothekare an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken	79
State Library of Berlin' Prussian Cultural Heritage	14, 41, 95	VHS = Volkshochschule	30
State Library of Lower Saxony	95	Vienna Declaration (NAPLE)	87
State Media Centers (Landesmedienzentren)	28, 64	Virtual Medical Library	44
State Parliament (Landtag)	26	Virtual Subject Libraries	116
State Service Centers for Public Libraries	26	VLB = Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher	34
Stiftung Lesen (Mainz)	33	Vocational Training Act (Berufsbildungsgesetz)	28
St. Michael's Association	18, 62	Vocational training schools (Berufsschule)	27, 73
Subito	93, 105	Volksbüchereien	17
Subject-based information centers – FIZ	67	Volkswagen University Library (Berlin)	51
Subject indexing cooperation	96	<i>webis</i>	93
Teaching library	112	Weblogs	115
Technical academies	29	Wikipedia	115
Technical Information Library (TIB)	44	Wissenschaftliche Allgemeinbibliothek	20
Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (FAMI)	28, 69, 72	Wissenschaftliche Stadtbibliothek	46
Tertiary education	33	Wissenschaftsrat	89
Theological seminaries	30	WorldCat	98
TIB = Technische Informationsbibliothek	44	Young people's libraries	62
Translations	35	ZB MED = Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Medizin	44
Troop libraries	66	ZBW = Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften	37
TV-L = Tarifvertrag der Länder	70	ZDB = Zeitschriftendatenbank	99
TVÖD = Tarifvertrag Öffentlicher Dienst	70	Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie (ZfBB)	81
Two-tier library system	49	ZEIT-Stiftung Ebelin und Gerd Bucerius	79
UNESCO Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions	88	Zentrales Verzeichnis Digitalisierter Drucke	114
Unification Treaty (Einigungsvertrag)	24	ZfBB = Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie	81
Union Catalog of Incunabula	101	ZLB = Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin	58
Union catalogs	97	ZVDD = Zentrales Verzeichnis Digitalisierter Drucke	97
Universal Authority File (GND)	96		
Universities	32		
Universities of Applied Sciences (Fachhochschulen)	30, 32		
University autonomy	31		
University libraries	48		
University of Applied Sciences Hamburg	74		
University press	114		
Vascoda	68, 94, 116		
VBA = Verein der Bibliothekare und Assistenten	79		
VD 16 = Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachbereich erschienenen Drucke des 16. Jahrhunderts	101		

